

THE
Complete SPORTSMAN;
OR
Country Gentleman's
RECREATION.

CONTAINING

The very best Instructions under the following Heads:

VIZ.

Of Breeding and the Management
of Game-Cocks.
Of Cock-fighting.
Of Colts and backing Colts.
Of the Breeding and Management
of Race-Horses, Hunters, &c.
Of Horse-Racing.
Of Bowling.
Of Courfing.
Of Hare-hunting.
Of Fox-hunting.

Of Buck-hunting.
Of Breeding and Ordering all
Manner of Dogs, Pigeons, Rab-
bits, &c.
Of Angling.
Of Otters and Otter-hunting.
Of Pheasants, Partridges, Wood-
cocks, and all Manner of Game.
Of Breeding and Managing Ca-
nary Birds, &c. &c.

And several other Articles too numerous to be
mentioned in a Title Page.

Compiled by Mr. T. FAIRFAX.

—By Exercise the flaccid Nerves
Grow firm, and gain a more compacted Tone.

Dr. ARMSTRONG.

L O N D O N :

Printed for J. COOKE, at Shakespear's-Head, in
Pater - Noster Row.

MDCCLXV.

THE
COMPLETE COLLECTION

OF
THE
HISTORICAL COLLECTION

OF THE
HISTORICAL COLLECTION



30.5.82



T H E

Compleat Sportsman :

O R,

COUNTRY-GENTLEMAN'S

R E C R E A T I O N.

Of GAME-CKOCKS, and COCK-FIGHTING.

Of the Choice of COCKS.



THE best properties for the choice of fighting-cocks, is their shape, colour, and courage, and sharp heels or spurs. As to their shape, the middle sized ones are esteemed the best, as being soonest and easiest matched, as also the nimblest and generally of most courage ; whereas the large ones (called the turn pock) it is difficult to find their equal ; besides they are, for the most part, heavy, not shewing that sport in a battle : likewise the small sized ones are weak and tedious in battle.

A

The

The Shape.

He should be of a proud and upright shape, with a small head, a quick large eye, with a strong back, crooked and big at the setting on the beam of his legs, very strong, and, according to his plume, grey, blue, or yellow; his spurs long, rough and sharp, a little bending inwards.

His Colour.

The grey pile, yellow pile, or red, with the black breast, is esteemed the best; the pied is not so good, and the white and dun worst of all.

If he is red about the head, like Scarlet, it is a sign of strength, lust and courage; but if pale, it is a sign of faintness and sickness.

His Courage.

His courage is shewed by his walk, treading, and pride of his going, and in pen by his frequent crowing: for the sharpness of his heel, or, as the cock masters call it, the narrow heel is only seen in his fighting; for the cock is said to be sharp heeled, or narrow heeled, which every time he rises, hits and draws blood of his adversary, gilding (as they term it) his spurs in blood, and every blow threatening the other's death.

And such cocks are the best; for a sharp heeled cock, though he be a little false, is deemed much better than the truest cock that hath a dull heel, and hits seldom.

But that cock which is both hard, and very sharp heeled, is to be esteemed above others; therefore in your choice, chuse such an one as is of a strong shape, good colour, and of a most sharp and ready heel.

Of Breeding.

For the breeding these cocks for battle, it is much different from those of the dunghill; for they are like
birds

birds of prey, in which the female is of better esteem than the male; and so in the breeding of these cocks, be sure that the hens be right, that is, they must be of a right plume, as grey, grizzle, speckled or yellowish.

Black or brown is not amiss, their bodies large, and well pouked behind for large eggs, and well tufted on the crowns, which shows good courage.

If they have weapons, it is the better; also they must be of a good courage, otherwise their chickens will not be good.

And it is observable, that the perfect hen from a dunghill-cock, will bring a good chicken; but the best cock from a dunghill-hen, can never get a good one.

Thus having got a breed of perfect cocks and hens, the best season of the year to breed in, is from the increase of the moon in *February*, to the increase of the moon in *March*, for a *March* bird is of far greater esteem than those bred at other times.

Let the pen where she sits be placed warm, with soft sweet straw therein for her nest, they being much tenderer than the dunghill hens, and permit no other fowl to come where she sits, for that will disturb her.

You should observe, if she be busy in turning her eggs (being a good sign) if not, do it at such times as she riseth from her nest; and be sure that she hath always meat and water by her, least when she riseth, she should stay long to seek food, and so her eggs should be chilled and spoiled.

Likewise in the place where she sits, let there be sand, gravel, and fine sifted ashes, to bath and trim herself at pleasure.

In about three weeks she will hatch, and observe, that if she doth cover and keep the first warm till the rest are hatched, take those from her, and keep them warm in wool by the fire, till all are hatched, and then put them under her, keeping both the hen and chickens very warm, not suffering them to go abroad for

three weeks or a month in the cold ; for they are so tender, that cold will kill them.

Let them have plenty of food, as oatmeal, cheefe parings, fine small wheat, and the like, and a large room to walk in, with a boarded floor ; for that of earth or brick, is too cold or moist.

After three or four weeks, let them walk in your court-yard, or garden, to pick worms, provided there is no sinks or puddles of stinking water, which is as bad as poison for them to drink, engendering corrupt diseases.

After this manner keep them till you can know the cock chickens from the hens ; and when you perceive their combs or wattles to appear, cut them off, anoint the sore with sweet butter, till well ; and this will make them have fine, small, slender, and smooth heads ; whereas if you let the combs grow to their bigness, and then cut them off, it will cause them to have gouty thick heads, with great lumps ; neither is the flux of blood good, for the least loss of blood in a feathered fowl, is very dangerous.

Let the cock chickens go with their hens, till they begin to fight one with another ; but then separate them into several walks, and that walk is the best, that is freest from the resort of others.

Let the feeding places be upon soft dry ground, or upon boards ; for to feed them upon pavements, or on plaister floors, will make their beaks blunt and weak, so that it will hinder their holding fast.

Any white corn, as oats, barley, or wheat, is good food for a cock in his walk ; so are toasts, or crusts of bread steeped in beer or wine, for it will both scour and cool them inwardly.

If your chickens begin to crow at about six months old, clear and loud, or at unseasonable times, it is a sign of cowardice and falshood, so that they are not worth the rearing ; for the true cock is very long before

before he can get his voice, and then he observes his hours.

To one cock four or five hens are sufficient; for they are of so hot a nature, and will tread so much, that they soon consume their natural strength.

At two years old you may put a cock to the battle, as not being before perfect and compleat in every member; for to suffer him to fight when his spurs are but warts, you may know their courage, but not their goodness.

You must also be circumspect about the perch whereon he roosteth; for if it be too small in the gripe, or crooked, or so ill placed, that he cannot sit without straddling, it will make him uneven heeled, and by consequence no good striker.

Seeing therefore that the perch is of such consequence for the marring or making them, the best way is to make a row of little perches, not above seven or eight inches long, and about a foot from the ground, so that with ease they may go up to them; and being set, must have their legs close, the shortness of the perch not admitting otherwise; and it is a maxim, *He that is a close sitter, is always a narrow striker.*

You must also be careful, that when your cock doth leap from the perch, the ground be soft whereupon he lighteth; for hard ground causeth goutiness.

Of dieting and ordering COCKS.

For dieting and ordering a cock for the battle, which is the principal thing (for the best cock undieted, is not able to encounter with the worst that is dieted,) observe these directions.

The best time to take up your cocks, is the latter end of *August*, (for from that time, till the latter end of *May*, cocking is in request;) and having viewed them well, and that they are sound, hard feathered, and full summed, put them into several pens.

Now for the true making them, it were more convenient to visit some Cock-master, for an ocular sight is better than a verbal description ; only let me tell you, it should be made of close boards, well joined together, all but the fore part, which must be made open like a grate, the bars about two inches apart, and before the grate, two large troughs of soft wood, the one for water, and the other for meat ; the door of the grate to be made to lift up and down, and of such largeness, as with ease to put the cock in, and take him out, and to clean the pen daily to keep it sweet.

The pen should be at least three foot high, and two foot square, of these pens many may be joined in one front, according to the use you have for them.

For the first three or four days that they are put in their pens, feed them only with old wheat bread, the crust pared away, and cut into little square bits, with which feed them at sun-rising, and sun-set, giving them about a handful at a time ; and besure let him not be without good fresh water.

After they have been thus fed four days, and their crops cleared of the corn, worms, and other coarse feeding, in the morning take them out of their pens, putting a pair of hots upon each of their heels, which hots are soft bombasted rolls of leather, covering their spurs, that they cannot hurt or bruise one another, so setting them down upon the grass, (that is two at a time) let them fight and buffle one another for a good while, provided they do not wound or draw blood of each other, and this is called sparring of cocks.

The reason of thus exercising them, is to chafe and heat their bodies, to break the fat and glut within them, and to cause it to come away.

Your cocks being sparred sufficiently, and that you see them pant and grow weary, take them up and untie their hots ; then being provided with deep straw baskets made for that purpose, with sweet soft straw

to

to the middle, put into each basket a cock, covering him over with the like straw to the top ; then put on the lid close, so let him sweat and stowe till the evening : but before you put him into the basket, give him a pretty big lump of sweet butter, with white sugar candy, and rosemary finely chopped, and this scouring will bring away his grease, and breed breath and strength.

In the evening, about four or five of the clock, take them out of the stoving basket, and licking their heads and eyes all over, put them into the pens, then take a good handful of bread cut small, put it to each in their troughs, and piss therein, so that the cock may take the bread out of the warm urine, and this will scour and cleanse both the head and the body extremely.

The bread that you must now and afterwards give them, must not be fine white bread, but a sort made for that purpose, after this manner :

Take half a peck of wheat meal, and the like quantity of fine oatmeal ; mix these together, and knead them into a stiff paste, with ale, the whites of twelve eggs, and half a pound of butter.

This paste being well wrought, make it into broad thin cakes, and being three or four days old, and the blister rings cut away, cut it into little square bits, and give it to the cocks.

There are some that will mix in the said bread, liquorice, aniseed, with hot spices ; but this is not good, as making them too hot at heart, so that when they come to the latter end of a battle, they are overcome with their heat.

Having fed your cocks thus after their sparring, the next day let them rest, only give them their ordinary feeding of bread and water ; then the next day (which is the sparring) take them into a fair, even, green close, there set down one of them, and having a dunghill

cock in your arms, shew it him, running from him, enticing him to follow you ; and so chafe him up and down for half an hour, suffering him now and then to have a stroke at him ; and when you see him well heated and panteth, take him up, and carry him to his pen, the like do with the rest, and there give him his scouring ; take fresh butter, (that is, without salt) half a pound ; beat it in a mortar, with the herb of grace, hyssop, and rosemary, until the herbs are incorporated therein, and that the butter is brought to a green salve ; and of this give the cock a roll or two, as big as he can well swallow ; then stove him in the basket, as aforesaid, until the evening ; then take him out, put him in his pen, and feed him as before directed.

The next day let him rest and feed, and the day following again sparr him ; and this method observe every other day for the first fortnight, to spar or chafe him, as being the most natural and kindest heats ; but forget not to give him a scouring after every heat, as aforesaid, for the breaking and cleansing him from grease, glut and filth, which lying in his body causeth purfiness and faintness, so that he cannot stand out the latter end of a battle.

Thus having fed your cock the first fortnight, observe the same rules the next fortnight ; but, for a week do not spar him, or give him heats above twice a week, so that three or four times in a fortnight will be sufficient ; and each time stove and scour him, according to the nature of his heats, long heats requiring longer stoving, as also greater scouring.

But if you find him in good breath, and that he requires but slight heats, then stove him the less, and give him the less scouring.

For the third fortnight, which compleats the six weeks, (which is sufficient to prepare a cock for battle) feed him as aforesaid, but spar him not at all, for
fear

fear of making his head tender and sore, neither give him any violent exercise, but only two or three times in the fortnight, let him moderately be chafed up and down, to maintain his wind ; and now and then cuff a cock ; which you must hold in your hands ; which done, give him his scouring, well rolled up in powder of brown sugar candy ; for the cock being now come to his perfect breath, and clear from filth in his body, the sugar prevents that sickness which the scouring would then cause, and also strengthens nature against the medicine.

Matching of fighting Cocks.

Your six weeks feeding being finished, and finding your cock in lust and breath, he is fit to fight, always observing, that he hath at least three days rest before fighting, and be well emptied of meat before you bring him into the pit.

Being brought into the pit, your chief care must be in the matching him, in which consists the greatest glory of a cock-master ; therefore in your matching there are but two things to be considered, *viz.* the strength of cocks, and the length of cocks ; for if he be too strong, he will overbear your cock, not permitting him to rise, or strike with any advantage ; if he be too long, your cock will hardly catch his head, so that he can neither endanger eye nor life.

Now for the knowledge of these, there are two rules : as for his strength, it is known by the thickness of his body, that cock being held strongest which is largest in the girth, which may be easily known by the measuring him with your fingers : as for his length, it is easily known, by griping him about the middle, causing him to stretch forth his legs ; but if you are doubtful of losing in the one, yet are sure to gain in the other, you may venture to match.

Your cock being matched thus, prepare him to the
A 5
battle

battle : first, with a fine pair of cock-shears, cut off his mane close to the neck, from his head to the setting on of his shoulders ; then clip off all the feathers from his tail close to his rump, which the more scarlet it appears, the better estate of body he is in : then take his wings, extending them forth by the first feather, clip the rest slopewise, with sharp points, that in his rising he may endanger the eyes of his adversary ; then, with a sharp knife, scrape smooth and sharpen his beak, and also smooth and sharpen his spurs ; and lastly, see that there be no feathers about the crown of his head for his adversary to take hold of ; then, with your spittle, moisten his head all over, and so turn him into the pit to try his fortune.

The battle being ended, your first business must be to search his wounds, and such as you find, suck out the blood with your mouth ; then wash them with warm urine to keep them from rankling, and presently give him a bit or two of your best scouring, and so stowe him up as hot as you can for that night ; and in the morning take him forth, and if you see his head much swelled, suck it with your mouth, as aforesaid, and bath it with warm urine.

Then having the powder of the herb *Robert*, well dried, and finely sifted, pounce all the sore places therewith, and give him a good handful of bread to eat, out of warm wine, and then put him into the stove again, as before directed, being very careful that no air come to him till the swelling is gone ; but twice a day suck and dress him, feed him as aforesaid.

But if your cock has received any hurt in his eye, then take a leaf or two of right ground-ivy, that is, such as grows in little tufts in the bottom of hedges ; chew this in your mouth very well, sucking out the juice, which squirting into his eye two or three times, will soon cure it, provided the sight is not pierced ; and it will also preserve the eye from films, flaws, warts, &c.

If

If your cock hath veined himself, either by narrow striking, or other cross blow, find out the wound, and presently bind unto it the soft down of a hare, and it will both stanch it, and cure it.

After your wounded cocks are put forth to their walks, as being fit to go abroad, and when you come to visit them in about a month or two after, if you find any hard swelled bunches about their heads, blackish at one end, it is a sign of unsound cores; and then with a sharp pen-knife open them, and crush out the said cores; then suck out all the corruption, and fill the holes with fresh butter, which will perfect the cure.

Of COLTS.

COLT, a word in general, signifying the male and female of the horse kind; the first likewise, for distinction sake, being called a horse colt, and the other a filly.

After the colts have been foaled, you may suffer them to run with the mare till about *Michaelmas*, sooner or later, according as the cold weather comes in; then they must be weaned; tho' some persons are for having them weaned after *Martinmas*, or the middle of *November*, and that three days before the full of the moon: but the author of the *Compleat Horseman* is of opinion, that the reason why most foals advance so slowly, and are not capable of service till they are six or seven years old, is because they have not sucked long enough; whereas if they had sucked the whole winter over, they would be as good at four or five years old, as they are now at eight.

They ought to be kept in a convenient house, with a low rack and manger for their hay and oats, which must be sweet and good; with a little wheaten bran mixed with the oats, to cause them to drink and to keep their bodies open.

But since there are some who alledge, that oats make foals become blind, or their teeth crooked; the same author is of opinion, that oats will wear their teeth, and make them the sooner to change, and also to raze; therefore he judges it to be the best way to break them in a mill, because by endeavouring with their jaws to bruise and chew them, they stretch and swell their eye and nether jaw-veins, which so attract the blood and humours, that they fall down upon the eyes, and frequently occasion the loss of them: so that it is not the heating qualities of oats, but the difficulty in chewing, that is the cause of their blindness.

Further, that colts thus fed with grain, do not grow thickish upon their legs, but grow broader, and better knit, than if they had eaten nothing but hay and bran, and will endure fatigue the better.

But above all they must be kept from wet and cold, which are the hurtfullest things imaginable to them, nothing being more tender than they are.

For proof of this, take a Spanish stallion, and let him cover two mares, which for age, beauty, and comeliness, may admit of no difference between them; and if they be both horse colts, or both fillies, which is one and the same thing, let one run abroad, and the other be housed, every winter, kept warm, and ordinarily attended, as aforesaid; and that colt that has been kept abroad shall have large fleshy shoulders, flabby and gouty legs, weak pasterns, and ill hoofs; and shall be a dull, heavy jade, in comparison to the other which is housed, and orderly kept, as before; and which will have a fine forehead, be well shaped, have good legs and hoofs, and be of good strength and spirit: by which you may know, that to have the finest stallion, and the beautifullest mare, is nothing, if they are spoiled in the breeding up.

It is worth observation, that some foals, under six months old, tho' their dams yield abundance of milk, yet

yet decay daily, and have a cough, proceeding from certain pellicles, or skins that breed in their stomachs, which obstruct their breathing, and at last destroy them intirely.

To remedy this malady, take the bag wherein the colt was foaled, dry it, and give him as much of it in milk as you can take up with three fingers : but if you have not preserved the bag, procure the lungs of a young fox, and use it instead of the aforesaid powder.

It will be proper to let the colts play an hour or two in some court-yard, or the like place, when it is fair weather, provided you put them up again carefully, and see that they take no harm.

When the winter is spent, turn them into some dry ground, where the grass is short and sweet, and where there is good water, that they may drink at pleasure ; for it is not necessary that a colt should fill his belly immediately, like a horse that labours hard.

The next winter you may take them into the house, and use them just as your other horses ; but let not your horse-colts and fillies be kept together, after the first year.

This method may be observed every summer and winter, till you break them, which you may do after they have been three years old ; and it will be a very easy thing, if you observe the aforesaid method of housing them, for ordering them the second year as you do other horses, that they will be so tame and gentle, that you need not fear their plunging, leaping, kicking, or the like coltish tricks ; for they will take the saddle quietly.

As for all those ridiculous ways of beating and cowering them, they are, in effect, spoiling them, whatever they call it, in ploughed fields, deep ways, or the like ; instead of which, let the rider strive to win them by gentle usage, never correcting them but when it is necessary, and then with judgment and moderation.

You

You will not need a caveſſon of cord, which is a head-ſtrain, nor a pad of ſtraw ; but only a common ſaddle, and a common caveſſon on his noſe, ſuch as other horſes are ridden with ; but it ought to be well lined with double leather, as the reſt are ; and if you pleaſe you may put on his mouth a watering-bit, without reins, only the head-ſtall, and this but for a few days ; and then put on ſuch a bit as he ſhould be always ridden with : and be ſure not to uſe ſpurs for ſome time after backing.

Take notice, that as yearlings muſt be kept abroad together, ſo thoſe of two years old together ; the like for thoſe of three yearlings, which ordering is moſt agreeable to them.

In order to make him endure the ſaddle the better, the way to make it familiar to him will be, by clapping the ſaddle with your hand as it ſtands upon his back, by ſtriking it, and ſwaying upon it, dangling the ſtirrups by his ſides, rubbing them againſt his ſides, and making much of him, and bring him to be familiar with all things about him ; as ſtraining the crupper, faſtening and looſening the girths, and taking up and letting out the ſtirrups.

Then as to the mouthing of him, when he will trot with the ſaddle obediently, then waſh a trench of a full mouth, and put the ſame into his mouth, throwing the reins over the fore part of the ſaddle, ſo that he may have a full feeling of it ; then put on a martingal, buckled at ſuch a length, that he may but juſt feel it when he jirks up his head ; then take a broad piece of leather and put about his neck, and make the ends of it faſt by platting of it, or ſome other way, at the withers, and the middle part before his weaſand, about two handfuls below the thropple, betwixt the leather and his neck : let the martingal paſs ſo, that when at any time he offers to duck, or throw down his head, the caveſſon being placed upon the tender griſle of his noſe, may correct and puniſh him ; which will make him bring
his

his head to, and form him to an absolute rein : then trot him abroad, and if you find the reins or martingal grow slack, straiten them, for when there is no feeling, there is no virtue.

Of BACKING COLTS.

BACKING a colt, after he has been exercised some time morning and evening, and you find him obedient, as directed under the head of colt ; then take him to some ploughed grounds, the lighter the better, and when you have made him trot a good pace about it in your hand, and thereby taken him from all his wantonness ; see whether your tackling be firm and good, and every thing in it's true and proper place ; when having one stay to his head, and governing the chafing rein, you may take his back, yet not suddenly but by degrees, with divers heavings, and half risings, which if he endure patiently, then settle yourself ; but if he shrink and dislike, then forbear to mount, and chafe him about again, and then offer to mount, and and do this till he be willing to receive you.

After you are settled, receive your stirrups, and cherish him, put your toes forward, let him that stays his head lead him forwards half a dozen paces, then cherish him again, shake and move yourself on the saddle, then let the stayer of his head, remove his hand a little from the cavelon, as you thrust your toes forward, let him move him forward with his rein, till you have made him apprehend your own motion of the body, and foot, which must go equally together, and with spirit also that he will go forward without the other's assistance, and stay upon the restraint of your own hands ; then cherish him, and give grass, and bread to eat, alight from his back, mount and unmount twice or thrice together, ever mixing them with cherishings, thus exercise him, till he be made perfect in going forwards,

wards and standing still at pleasure : this being done, the long rein may be laid aside, and the band about the neck, and only use the trenches and cavesson with the martingal, and let the groom lead the way before, or another horse going only strait forwards, and make him stand still when you please, which will soon be effected by trotting after another horse, sometimes equally with him, sometimes before, so that he fix upon no certainty but your own pleasure, and be sure to have regard to the well carriage of his neck, and head, and as the martingal slackens, so straighten it from time to time.

Of HORSES.

A HORSE is a four-footed animal, of great use to mankind, especially in the country; this creature being by nature valiant, strong, and nimble, above all other beasts, most able and apt to endure the extremest labours, the moist quality of his composition being such, that neither extreme heat dries up his strength, nor the violence of the cold freezes the warm temper of his moving spirits : He is most gentle and loving to man, apt to be taught, and not forgetful when an impression is fixed in his brain, being watchful above all other beasts, and will endure his labour with the most empty stomach. He is naturally given to much cleanliness, and has an excellent scent, and not so much as to offend any man with his ill favours.

Now for his shapes in general ; the usual character is, that he must have the eyes and joints of an ox, the strength and foot of a mule, the hoofs and thighs of an ass, the throat and neck of a wolf, the ear and tail of a fox, the breast and hair of a woman, the boldness of a lion, the shape and quick-sightedness of a serpent, the face of a cat, the lightness and nimbleness of a hare, a high pace, a deliberate trot, a pleasant gallop, a swift running,

running, a rebounding leap, and to be present, and be quick in hand.

As to his colours, the best are the brown bay, dapple grey, roan, bright bay, black with a white near foot behind, white fore-foot before, white star; chestnut or sorrel with any of these marks, or dun with a black list.

But to return to the more particular shapes of a horse, and so set them in view in the comliest manner, it is required that the hoof be black, smooth, large, dry, round, and hollow; the pasterns strait and upright, fetlocks short; the legs strait and flat, called also, lash-legged; the knees bony, lean, and round; the neck long, high reared, and great towards the breast; the breast large and round; the ears long, sharp, small, and upright; the forehead lean and large; the eyes great, full, and black; the brows well filled, and shooting outwards; the jaws slender and lean, wide and open; the mouth great; the head large and lean, like to a sheep; the mane thin and large; the withers sharp and pointed; the back short, even, plain, and double chined; the sides and ribs deep, large, and bearing out like the cover of a trunk, and close shut at the huckle bone; the belly long and great, but hid under the ribs; the flanks full, but yet gaunt; the rump round, plain, and broad, with a large space between the buttocks; the thighs long and large, with well fashioned bones, and those fleshy; the hams dry and strait; the truncheon small, long, well set on, and well couched; the train long, not too thick, and falling to the ground; the yard and stones small; and he should be well risen before. We will conclude with the description of a famous horseman, in few words.

The horse should have a broad forehead, a great eye, a lean head; thin, slender, lean, wide jaws; a long, high, rearing neck; rearing withers; a broad
deep

deep chest and body, upright pasterns, and narrow hoofs.

There are very many things relating to a horse, and very necessary to be known, which will be found under their proper articles ; only there are a few which are not so conveniently reducible under such heads, which must have room here.

To begin with turning a horse to grass : you ought, eight or nine days before you do it, to take blood of him ; next day after, give him the drink called, *diapente*, and in a day or two after his drink, abate of his cloaths by degrees, before you turn him out, lest by doing them on a sudden he should take cold ; and curry him not at all after his cloaths are taken off, but let him stand in his dust, for that will keep him warm ; neither is it proper to put him out till the middle of *May*, at soonest, for till that time grass will not have bite enough ; and let the day be warm, sun-shine, and about ten o'clock, for horses pampered in stables and kept close, will be very subject to take cold.

To take him up from grass, he must be very dry, else he will be subject to be scabby ; and that not later than *Bartholomew-tide*, when the season begins to let cold dews fall, that cause much harm to your horse ; and then also the heart of the grass begins to fail, inso-much, that the grass which he then feeds upon breeds no good nourishment, but gross, phlegmatic, and cold humours, which putrify and corrupt the blood ; and take him up very quickly, for fear of melting his grease, his fat gotten at grass being very tender : then a day or two after he is in the stable, let him be shod, let blood, and drenched, which will prevent the staggers, yellows, and the like distempers, occasioned by the gall and spleen, which the heart and strength of the grass, through the rankness of the blood, engenders in the body.

But the curious, after they have taken the horse
into

into the stable, before they either blood or drench him, in a hot, sun-shining day take him out into a convenient place, and there trim him; and then taking ordinary washing soap, anoint his head and every part of him with it all over, having care that none gets into his eyes and ears; then they wash him very well all over with warm water, and wipe him with a warm linnen cloth, and afterwards rub him dry with woollen cloths; then soap him all over again, especially his mane and tail, and wash him very clean with back lee, with a wisp of woollen cloth, and when they have sufficiently cleansed him, dry him as before, and lead him into the stable, let him be cleansed with a clean, thin, soft cloth.

So much for turning in, and out of grafs. There are two or three things more to be added, that are of some significancy in reference to this noble creature; and the first is, to make a horse follow his master, and to find him out and challenge him amongst ever so many people.

Take a pound of oatmeal, to which put a quarter of a pound of honey, and half a pound of liquorice, make a little cake thereof, and put into your bosom next to your naked skin, then run and labour your self till you sweat, and so rub all your sweat upon your cake; then keep the horse fasting a day and a night and give it him to eat, which done, turn him loose, and he shall not only follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he has lost you; and when he comes to you, spit in his mouth, anoint his tongue with your spittle, and thus doing, he will never forsake you.

Another thing, is to shew how to make a horse look young: take a crooked iron, no bigger than a wheat corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outermost teeth of each side the nether chap before, next to the tusshes where the mark is worn out, then pick it with an awl blade,
and

and make the shell fine and thin ; then with a sharp scraping-iron make all his teeth white and clean ; this done, take a fine lancet, and about the hollows of the horse's eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only thro' the skin, and put in the quill of a raven or crow, and blow the skin full of wind ; then take the quill out, lay your finger on the hole a little while, and the wind will stay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but six years old.

This way of making a horse look young, is by horse-courfers called *bishoping*, and is necessary to be known by countrymen and others, not to cheat others with, but to prevent their being cheated themselves ; and therefore they should have great regard to the *Rules for buying horses*, to which all persons are referred whom it may concern.

There may be other lawful occasions, besides service of war, to prevent a horse from neighing ; for which end, take a list of woollen cloth, and tying it fast in many folds about the midst of his voice or wind-pipe, and it will do, for it has been often tried and approved. You will likewise meet with the several diseases incident to horses, under their names, together with the several methods and prescriptions for the cures, too long to be here named.

Of HORSE-FEEDERS, or GROOMS.

THERE are many observations to be made by one engaged in this office, in order to perform it well, especially when he has the care of running-horses, but we shall only mention a few.

I. As to meat or drink, if there be any such, or other nourishment that he knows good for a horse, which yet the beast refuses, you must not thrust it violently upon him, but by gentle enticements win him thereto, tempting him when he is most hungry or most dry ; if he get but a bit at a time, he will soon increase to a greater quantity.

Ever

Ever let him have less than he desires; and that he may be brought the sooner to it, mix the meat he loves best with that he loves worst, till both be alike familiar, so shall he be a stranger to nothing that is good and wholesome.

2. If he finds his horse subject to stiffness and lameness to the surbate, or to tenderness of feet, then he should give him his heat upon smooth carpet earth, or forbear strong grounds, hard high-ways, cross-ruts and furrows, till extremity compel him.

3. For the condition of a horse's body, he must account that the strongest state which is the highest and best of flesh, so it be good, hard, without inward foulness, to be the best and most proper for the performing of matches: and herein you must consider, first, the shape of a horse's body, there being some that are round, plump, and close knit together, which will appear fat and well shaped, when they are lean and in poverty; while others that are raw-boned, slender, and loose knit, will appear lean and deformed, when they are fat, foul, and full of gross humours.

So likewise for their inclinations; for some horses at the first, feed outwardly, and carry a thick rib, when they are inwardly as lean as may be; whereas others appear lean to the eye, when they are only grease.

In which case the feeder has two helps to advantage his knowledge, the outward, and the inward one.

4. The first is, the outward handling and feeling the horse's body all over his ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindmost ribs, and if his flesh generally handle soft and loose, and the fingers sink therein as in down, he is foul without all question; but if it be hard and firm, and only soft upon the hindmost rib, he has grease and foul matter within him, which must be voided whatever comes of it. And for the inward help, that is only sharp exercise, and strong scouring, the first to dissolve, and the latter to bring it away.

5. It is the feeder's business to observe the horse's stones, for if they hang downwards, or low from his body he is out of lust and heat, and is either sick of grease or other foul humours; but in case they lie close trussed up, and hid in a small room, then he is healthful, and in good plight.

6. As to his limbs, the feeder or groom must ever before he runs any match or sore heat, bathe his legs, from the knees and gambrels downwards, either with clarified dogs grease, (which is the best) or trotter oil, that is next to it, or else the best hog's grease, which is sufficient, and work it in well with his hands, not with fire, for what he gets not in the first night, will be got in the next morning, and what is not got in then, will be got in when he comes to uncloath at the end of the course; so that the ointment need be used but once, but the rubbing as often as there is opportunity.

7. The feeder may in any of the latter fortnight's of a running horse's feeding, if he finds him clear, and his grease consumed, about six in the evening, give him water in a reasonable quantity, made luke-warm, keeping him fasting an hour after: also, if through the unseasonableness of the weather you cannot water him abroad, then at your watering hours you are to do it in the house, with warm water, and an handful of wheat-meal, bran, or oatmeal, finely powdered, (which last is the best) put into the water, which is very wholesome.

8. The rider is farther to note, that if the ground whereon the horse is to run his match, be dangerous, and apt for bad accidents, as strains, over-reaches, sinew-bruises, and the like, that then he is not bound to give him his heats thereon, but having made him acquainted with the nature thereof, let him take part of the course, as a mile, two, or three, according to the goodness of the ground, and so run him forth again, (which are called turning-heats) provided always he end his
heat

heat at the weighing-post, and make not his course less, but more in quantity than that he must run.

If for some special causes he like no part of the course, he may often but not ever, give his heat upon any other ground about any spacious and large field, where the horse may lay down his body and run at pleasure.

9. He must have special regard to all airings, breathings, and other exercises whatever ; to the sweating of the horse, and the occasion, as if he sweat on little or no occasion, as walking a foot-pace, standing still in the stable, and the like ; this shews that the horse is faint, foul fed, and wants exercise : But if upon good occasions, as strong heats, great labour, and the like, he sweat, and it is a white froth like soap-suds, he is inwardly foul, and also wants exercise : again, if the sweat be black, and as it were only water thrown upon him, without any frothiness, then he is cleansed, and in good lust, and good case, and may be rid without any danger.

10. And lastly, he should observe his hair in general, but especially on his neck, and those parts that are uncovered, for if they lie sleek, smooth, and close, holding the beauty of their natural colour, the horse is in good case ; but if rough and staring, or discoloured, he must be inwardly cold at heart, and wants both cloaths and warm keeping.

Of HORSE SHOES.

Of these there are several sorts : 1. That called the planch-shoe, or pancelet, which makes a good foot, and a bad leg, by reason it causes the foot to grow beyond the measure of the leg ; tho' for a weak heel 'tis exceeding good, and will last longer than any shoe, being borrowed from the moil, that has weak heels and frushes, to keep the feet from stones and gravel.

2. Shoes with calkins, which tho' they be intended to secure the horse from sliding, yet they do him more harm than good, in that he cannot tread evenly upon
the

the ground, whereby many times he wrenches his foot, or strains some sinews, more especially upon stony ways, where the stones will not suffer his calkins to enter, the foot slips with more violence; tho' some do not think a horse well shod unless all his shoes be made with calkins, either single or double; however the double ones are less hurtful, for he will tread even with them than with single calkins, but they must not be over long, or sharp pointed, but rather short and flat.

3. There are shoes for rings, which were first invented to make a horse lift his feet up high, tho' such shoes are more painful than helpful, and 'tis an unhand-some sight: this defect is incident to most horses that have not sound hoofs, for tender feet fear to touch the ground that is hard: but what is intended for a remedy, proves a prejudice to the horse, by adding high calkins, or else these rings to his shoes, for by that means he is made to have weaker heels than before.

4. Shoes with swelling welts, or borders round about them, are used in *Germany*, &c. which being higher than the heads of the nails, save them from wearing; and these are the best lasting shoes, if made of well-tempered stuff, for they wear equally in all parts, and the horse treads equally upon them.

5. Others that use to pass mountains where smiths are not so easily to be met with, carry shoes about them with vices, whereby they fasten them to the horse's hoof without the help of the hammer or nail, notwithstanding 'tis more for shew than any good service; for tho' this sort of shoe may save his feet from stones, yet it so pinches his hoof, that he goes with pain, and perhaps injures it more than the stones do: therefore upon such emergent occasions, 'tis better to make use of a joint-shoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat rivet-nail joining them together in the toe,
so

so that you may make it both wide and narrow to serve any foot.

6. The pattern-shoe, is necessary for a horse that is burnt in the hip, stifle, or shoulder, which will cause him to bear upon that leg the grief is on, and consequently use it the better.

7. A shoe proper for flat feet

8. The panton, or pantable-shoe, which opens the heels, and helps hoof-binding.

These are of admirable use, in regard that they never shift upon the feet, and continue firm in one place.

9. And lastly, the half panton shoe.

OF HORSE RACING.

A diversion more used in *England* than in all the world beside. Horses for this use should be as light as possible, large, long, but well shaped; with a short back, long sides, and a little long-legged, and narrow-breasted, for such will gallop the lighter and nimbler, and run the faster. *Soleysel* says, he should be somewhat long bodied, nervous, of great mettle, good wind, good appetite, very swift, and sensible of the spurs; that he ought to be of an *English* breed, or *barb*, of a little size, with pretty small legs, but the back sinews a good distance from the bone, short-jointed, and have neat, well-shaped feet.

The excellent breed we have of horses, for *racing* in our own country, though through several abuses they have been unfortunately mischievous to a great many persons, yet if rightly regulated and made use of, might be very advantageous, as well as pleasant and diverting to men of quality; and that is by having *Plates* run for at several times, and in several countries, by which we may come exactly to know the speed, wind, force, and heart of every horse that runs, which directs us infallibly in our choice, when we would furnish our selves for hunting, breeding, road, and the like; whereas without

such trials, we must stand to the hazard, and not be at any certainty to meet with good ones. A horse may travel well, hunt well, and the like, and yet when he comes to be pressed hard, and forced to the extremity of what he can do, may not prove good at heart; and more particularly, some racers have been only beaten by their hearts sinking in them (that have wanted neither wind nor speed) when they come to be hard pressed.

It were indeed to be wished that our Nobility and Gentry would not make so much a trade of racing; and when they run only for plates, or their matches, that they would do it for no more than may be lost without damaging their estates; but to run so great a sum, that the Loss cannot be well born, and consequently endeavouring to win the same, if not more back again, it draws them into vast expence, by way of preparation for revenge, the consequences of which need not be mentioned. On the other hand, if a person proves successful, he is but too apt to fancy he shall prove so again, and sets up for a brother of the *spur*, and runs so fast, that sometimes neither estate nor friends can keep along with him, and so turns his diversion into misfortunes, a practice contrary to the good œconomy designed in the whole course of this work.

As to the method of ordering *running-horses*, or what is called *keeping*, since Noblemen and Gentlemen will do so, they will find what is proper to be done in that respect under the article *Running-Horses*, and therefore we will only here suppose a horse set to run for a *plate*, and that the hour of starting is at hand, when the drum beats or the trumpets sound, according to the custom of the place where you run, to give notice for stripping and weighing; be sure in the first place, to have your stomach empty, only take something to keep out the wind, and to strengthen
you :

you : if you are light, that you must carry weight, let it be equally quilted in your waistcoat ; but it is better if you are just weight, for then you have no more to do than to dress you, according to your own fancy ; your cloaths should be of coloured silk, or of white holland, as being very advantageous to the spectators ; your waistcoat and drawers must be made close to your body, and on your head a little cap tied on ; let your boots be gartered up fast, and your spurs must be of good mettall ; then mount and come to the starting-place, where going off briskly or gently, as occasion requires, make your horse perform the course or heat, according to your intended design, particularly, if you would win the same, and that your horse excels in goodness more than speed, start him off roundly, and run him to the very top of what he can do, during the whole course or heat ; and by that means, if the horse you run against be not so good at the bottom, tho' he has more speed, you shall beat him, because he will run off it a great way before he comes to the end. But on the contrary, if your horse's talent be speed, all that you can do is to wait upon the other horse, and keep behind till you come almost to the stand, and then endeavour to give a loose by him : sometimes when you are to run more heats than one, it will be your policy to lose a heat ; and in that case you must, for the easing and safeguard of your horse, lie behind as much as you can, provided you bring him in within distance.

The posture to be observed, is that you place yourself upon your twist, with your knees firm, and your stirrups just at such a length, that your feet, when they are thrust home in them, you can raise yourself a little in the saddle, for your legs, without that allowance, will not be firm when you come to run ; the counter-poise of your body must be forward, to facilitate your horse's running, and

your elbows must be close to your body ; be sure, above all things, that you do not incommode your horse by swagging this or that way, as some do, for since weight is a great matter in running, and that a troublesome rider is as bad as so much more weight, there is no need to say how necessary it is to take great care of your seat and hand ; you must therefore beware of holding yourself by the bridle, or of jobbing your horse's mouth upon any occasion ; you must take your right rein in the same hand, holding up *horse*, &c. as you find it necessary, and every now and then remove the bridle in his mouth. But these things are best learned by experience and practice.

A plate being run for by heats, every man that rides must be just weight at starting, in great scales for that purpose, and at the end of the same heat, for if you want of your weight at coming in, you shall lose your heat, tho' you are the first horse : you have half an hour between the first and second, to rub your horses, and at the warning of the drum and trumpet again, you mount, &c. as before, and so till all is done, which is three, and sometimes three heats and a course.

Nothing need be said of the ceremonies relating to the judges, and the articles by which *plate-races* and *matches* are regulated, since they are settled according to the different customs of the places where you run.

If you do not breed *racers* yourself, be sure you buy no horse that has not extraordinary good blood in his veins for the charge of keeping is great, and a good one eats no more than a bad, and requires no more attendance ; some to save twenty or thirty guineas in the price of a young *horse*, have lost hundreds by him afterwards.

A *horse* that you have tried once or twice at a twelve-stone plate, you may be sure will make an extraordinary good hunter : and you are to observe, that
the

the posture, manner of riding, &c. is the same in a match as in a plate-race, only that there being but a single course to be run, you must push for all at that one time ; whereas when there are several heats, there is more saving, and variety of play.

Of HUNTING HORSES.

A HORSE designed for this manly exercise, his shape should be generally strong and well knit together, making equal proportions ; for you are to observe, that which has unequal shapes shew weakness, so equal ones shew strength and durance ; and what we call unequal, are a great head and a little neck ; a big body, and a thick buttock ; a large limb to a little foot, &c. whereas he should have a large and lean head, wide nostrils, open channelled, a big weasand, and strait wind-pipe.

To order the *hunting-horse*, while he is at rest, let him have all the quietness that may be ; let him have much meat, much litter, much dressing, and water even by him ; let him sleep as long as he pleases ; keep him to dung rather soft than hard, and look that it be well coloured, and bright, for darkness shews grease, redness, and inward heat : and after his usual scourings, let him have exercises, and mashes of sweet malt, or let bread, or clean beans, or beans and wheat mixed together, be his best food, and beans and oats the most ordinary.

But Sir Robert Charnock's way of hunting in buck-season, was, never to take his horse up into the stable during the season, but he hunted him upon grass, only allowing him as many oats as he would well eat ; and this he approved of as a very good way, by reason, if there be any molten grease within him, which violent hunting may raise up, this going to grass will purge it out : It is affirmed, the same gentleman has rid his horse three times in a week during the season, and

never found any inconveniency, but rather good from it, so that care be taken, to turn the horse out very cool.

You may furnish yourself with a horse for hunting at some of our fairs, which should have, as near as can be, the following shapes.

A *head* lean, large, and long; a *chaul* thin, and open ears, small, and pricked; or, if they be somewhat long, provided they stand upright, like those of a fox, it is usually a sign of mettle and toughness.

His *forehead* long and broad, not flat, and, as it is usually termed hare-faced, rising in the midst like that of a hare, the feather being placed above the top of his eye; the contrary being thought by some to be token blindness.

His eyes full, large, and bright; his nostrils wide and red within, for an open nostril is a sign of a good wind.

His *mouth* large, deep in the wikes and hairy; his *throat*, *weasand* or *wind-pipe* big, loose, and strait, when he is reined in with the bridle; for if, when he bridles, it bends like a bow, (which is called *cock-thropled*) it very much hinders the free passage of his wind.

His *head* must be so set on to his neck, that a space may be felt between his neck and his chaul; for to be bull-necked is uncomely to sight, and also prejudicial to the horse's wind.

His crest should be firm, thin, and well-risen, his neck long, and strait, yet not loose and pliant, which the northern men term *withy-cragg'd*.

His breast strong and broad, his chest deep, his chine short, his body large and close shut up to the huckle-bone.

His ribs rounk like a barrel, his belly being hid within them.

His fillets large, his buttocks rather oval than broad, being well let down to the gascoins, his cambrels upright, and not bending, which some call *suckle-hoghed*; though some look upon this to be a sign of toughness and speed.

His

His legs clean, flat, and strait; his joints short, well knit, and upright, especially betwixt the pasterns and the hoof, having but little hair on his fetlocks; his hoofs black, strong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat.

Lastly, his mane and tail should be long and thin, rather than thick, which is counted by some a mark of dullness.

As to marks or colours, tho' they do not absolutely give testimony unto us of a *horse's* goodness, yet they, as well as his shape, do intimate to us, in some part, his disposition and qualities: The hair itself does often times receive the variation of it's colour, from the different temperature of the subject out of which it is produced.

And some do not scruple to affirm, that where-ever you meet with a *horse* that has no white about him, especially in his forehead, tho' he be otherwise of the best reputed colours, as bay, black, sorrel, he is of a dogged and sullen disposition, especially if he have a small pink eye, and a narrow face, with a nose bending like a hawk's bill.

The Age, &c. of a HUNTER.

HAVING procured a *horse* suitable to the former descriptions, or your own satisfaction at least, and which is supposed to be already grounded in the fundamentals of this art, being taught such obedience, as that he will readily answer to the horseman's helps and corrections both of the bridle and hand, the voice, the calf of the leg, and the spurs, that he knows how to make his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of mouth, and a right placing of his head, and that he hath learned to stop, and turn readily; for unless he has been perfectly taught these things, he can never proceed effectually.

The *horse* being thus prepared, should be five years
B 4
old,

old, and well way'd before you begin to hunt him; for altho' it is customary with some to hunt at four years old, yet at that age his joints not being well knit, nor he attained to his best strength and courage, he is unable to perform any work of speed and toughness, and will be in great danger of strains, and other maladies, and also a daunting of his spirit, and abating his natural courage.

Your *horse* being full five, you may, if you please, put him to graze, from the middle of *May* till *Bartholomew-tide*, for then the season will be so hot, it will not be convenient to work him.

Bartholomew-tide being now come, and the pride and strength of the grass nipped by the severe frosts and cold dews, so that the nourishment of it turns to raw crudities, and the coldness of the night abates as much of his flesh and lust as he gets in a day: take him from grass while his coat lies smooth and sleek.

Having brought him home, let your groom set him up that night in some secure and spacious house, where he may evacuate his body, and so be brought to warmer keeping by degrees, and the next day stable him.

It is indeed held as a general rule, among the generality of grooms, not to cloath nor dress their horses till two or three days after they have stabled them, (tho' there is little reason for it but custom); yet this custom conducing little to either the advantage or prejudice of the horse, I shall leave every one to their own fancies.

But as to the custom of giving the horse wheat-straw, to take up his belly, (which is also generally used by grooms at the first taking up and housing a horse) some persons very much disapprove of, for they say, that the nature of a horse being hot and dry, if he be fed with straw, which is so likewise, it would straiten his guts, and cause an inflammation of his liver, and by that means distemper his blood; and besides, it
would

would make his body so coſtly, that it would cauſe a retention of nature, and make him dung with great pain and difficulty ; whereas full feeding would expel the excrements, according to the true intention and inclination of nature.

Therefore let moderate airing, warm cloathing, good old hay, and old corn ſupply the place of wheat-ſtraw. See SHOEING or Page 24.

The firſt fortnight's DIET for a HUNTING HORSE ; or the ordering of a HUNTER ; for the firſt fortnight.

Your *horſe* being ſuppoſed to have evacuated all his graſs, and his ſhoes ſo well ſettled to his feet, that he may be fit to be ridden abroad without danger : I ſhall now, in a more particular manner, direct an unexperienced groom how he ought to proceed to order his horſe according to art.

Fiſt, he ought to viſit his horſe early in the morning, to wit, by five o'clock in ſummer, and ſix in winter ; and having put up his litter under his ſtall, and made clean his ſtables, to feel his ribs, his chaul, and his flank, they being the principal ſigns by which he muſt learn to judge of the good or ill ſtate of a horſe's body.

He ought to lay his hands on his ſhort ribs, near the flank, and if his fat feels to be exceeding ſoft and tender, and to yield as it were under his hand, then he may be confident it is unſound, and that the leaſt violent labour or travel will diſſolve it ; which being diſſolved before it be hardened by good diet, if it be not then removed by ſcouring, the fat or greaſe belonging to the outward parts of the body will fall down into his heels, and ſo cauſe goutineſs and ſwelling.

After, by feeling on his ribs, he has found his fat ſoft and unſound, then let him feel his chaul ; and if he finds any fleſhy ſubſtance, or great round kernels or knots, he may be aſſured that as his outward fat has been unſound, ſo inwardly he is full of glut, and pur-

five, by means of gross humours cleaving to the hollow places of his lungs, &c.

This fat is to be enfeamed and hardened by moderate exercise, warm cloathing, and gentle physick, to cleanse away his inward glut.

The same observations must be made from the flank, which will always be found to correspond with his ribs and chaul, for till it is drawn, it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is enfeamed you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by these three observations of the ribs, flank and chaps, you may at any time pass an indifferent judgment of the horse's good or bad condition.

Having made these remarks on your horse's state and condition of body, then sift a handful or two (but not more) of good old oats, and give them to him to preserve his stomach from cold humours which might oppress it by drinking fasting, and likewise to make him drink the better.

When he hath eaten them, pull off his collar, and rub his head, face, ears, and nape of the neck, with a clean rubbing-cloth made of hemp, for it is sovereign for the head, and dissolves all gross and filthy humours.

Then take a snaffle, and wash it in clean water, and put it on his head, drawing the rein thro' the headstall to prevent his slipping it over his head, and so tie him up to the rack, and dress him thus :

First, take a curry-comb, suitable to your horse's skin, in your right hand ; that is, if the coat of your horse be short and smooth, then must the curry-comb be blunt ; but if it be long and rough, then the teeth must be long and sharp : standing with your face opposite the horse's, hold the left cheek of the head-stall in your left-hand, and curry him with a good hand from the root of his ears, all along his neck to his shoulders ; then go over all his body with a more moderate

derate hand; then curry his buttocks down to the hinder cambrel with a hard hand again; then change your hand, and laying your right arm over his back, join your right side to his left, and so curry him gently from the top of his withers to the lower part of his shoulder, every now and then fetching your stroke over the left side of his breast, and so curry him down to the knee, but no farther.

Then curry him all under his belly, near his fore-bowels, and in a word, all over very well, his legs under the knees and cambrels only excepted; and as you dress his left side, so must you the right also.

In doing this, take notice where your horse keeps a rigling up and down, biting the rack-staffs, and now and then offering to snap at you, or lifting up his leg to strike at you, when you are currying him: if he do, it is an apparent sign, that the roughness of the comb displeases him, and therefore the teeth of it is to be filed more blunt; but if you perceive he plays these or such like tricks thro' wantonness, and the pleasure he takes in the friction, then you should every now and then correct him with your whip gently for his wagishness.

This currying is only to raise the dust. therefore, after the horse has been thus curried, take either an horse-tail nailed to an handle, or a clean dusting cloth of cotton, and with it strike off the loose dust that the curry-comb has raised.

Then dress him all over with the *French* brush, both head, body, and legs, to the very fetlocks, observing always to cleanse the brush from the filth it gathers from the bottom of the hair, by rubbing it on the curry-comb; then dust the horse again the second time.

Then having wetted your hand in water, rub his body all over, and, as near as you can, leave no loose hairs behind, and with your hands wet, pick, and cleanse his eyes, ears, and nostrils, sheath, cods and tuel, and so rub him till he is as dry as at first.

Then take an hair patch, and rub his body all over, but especially his fore-bowels under his belly, his flank, and between his hinder thighs : and, in the last place, wipe him over with a fine white linen rubber.

When you have thus dressed him, take a large saddle cloth (made on purpose) that may reach down to the spurring-place, and lap it about his body ; then clap on his saddle, and throw a cloth over him, that he may not catch cold.

Then twist two ropes of straw very hard together, and with them rub and chafe his legs from the knees and cambrels downwards to the ground, picking his fetlock joints, with your hands, from dust, filth, and scabs : then take another hair patch, kept on purpose for his legs, (for you must have two) and with it rub and dress his legs also.

And while you are dressing your *horse*, let him not stand naked, so that his body be exposed to the penetration of the air ; but when he is stripped, do your business roundly, without any intermission, till you have saddled him, and thrown his cloth over him.

When you have done this, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, comb down his mane and tail with a wet mane-comb, then spurt some beer in his mouth, and so draw him out of the stable.

Then mount him, rake or walk him either to some running river or fresh spring a mile or two distant from the stable, and there let him drink about half his draught at first, to prevent raw crudities arising in his stomach.

After he has drank, bring him calmly out of the water, and ride him gently for a while ; for nothing is more unbecoming a horseman than to put his horse upon a swift gallop as soon as he comes out of the water, for these three reasons.

1. He does not only hazard the breaking of his wind, but assuredly hazards the incording or bursting him.

2. It

2. It begets in him an ill habit of running away as soon as he has done drinking.

3. The foresight he has of such violent exercise, makes him oftentimes refuse to quench his thirst, and therefore walk him a little way, and then put him into a gentle gallop for five or six score paces, and give him wind; and after he has been raked a pretty while, shew him the water again, and let him drink as much as he will, and then gallop him again, and repeat this till he will drink no more; but be sure to observe always, that you gallop him not so much as to chafe or sweat him,

Here take notice, that in his gallopping after water, (after the first week's enfeaming) if sometimes you give him a watering-course sharply of twelve, or twenty score paces, (according as you find your horse) it will quench his spirit, and cause him to gallop more pleasantly, and teach him to manage his limbs more nimbly, and to stretch forth his body largely.

When your horse has done drinking, then rake him to the top of an hill, (if there be one near the watering-place) for there, in a morning, the air is purest; or else to some such place, where he may gain the most advantage both by sun and air, and there air him a foot-pace for an hour, or longer as you in your judgment shall think fit, for the state of his body, and then ride him home.

During the time of your horse's airing, you may easily perceive several tokens of your horse's satisfaction, and the pleasure that he takes in this exercise.

For he will gape, yawn, and as it were shrug his body.

If he offer to stand still to dung or stale, which his airing will provoke, be sure give him leave; as also to stare about, neigh, or listen after any noise.

These airings are advantageous to the horse on several accounts.

1. It purifies the blood (if the air be clear and pure); it purges the body of many gross and suffocating humours, and so hardens and enfeams the horse's fat, that it is not near so liable to be dissolved by ordinary exercise.

2. It teaches him how to let his wind rake, and equally keep time with the other actions and motions of his body.

3. It is of great advantage, both to hunters and gallopers, which are apt to lose their stomachs thro' excess or want of exercise, for the sharpness of the air will drive the horse's natural heat from the outward parts to the inward, which heat by furthering concoction creates appetite, and provokes the stomach.

4. It increases lust and courage in the horse, provided he be not aired too early.

When you are returned from airing, and are dismounted, lead the horse on the straw, which should always lie before the stable-door, and there by whistling and stirring up the litter under his belly, you will provoke him to stale, which he will be brought to do with a little practice, and it will be advantageous to the health of the horse, and a means of keeping the stable cleaner: then lead him into his stall, (having first been well littered); then tie up his head to the empty rack, take off the saddle, rub his body and legs all over with the *fresh-brush*, then with the *hair-patch*, and last of all with the *woollen-cloth*.

Then clothe him with a linen-cloth next to his body, and over that a canvass-cloth, and both made fit for him, to cover his breast, and to come pretty low down to his legs, which is the *Turkish* way of clothing, who (as the Duke of *Newcastle* says) are the most curious people in the world in keeping their horses.

Then put over the before-mentioned a body-cloth of six or eight straps, which is better than a surcingle and

and pad-stuff with whisps, because this keeps his belly in shape, and is not so subject to hurt him.

Now these cloths will be sufficient for him at his first stabling, because being inured to the cold, he will not be so apt to take cold, the weather being indifferently warm; but when sharp weather comes on, and you find his hair rise about those parts that are unclothed, as neck, gaskins, &c. then add another cloth, which ought to be of woollen; and for any horse bred under the climate, and kept only for ordinary hunting, this clothing will be sufficient.

Having already given directions as to the clothing the horse, I shall only add this one general rule; that a rough coat is a token of want of cloaths, and a smooth coat of cloathing sufficient; therefore if notwithstanding what cloaths you have given him, his coat still stares, you must add more cloaths till it lie.

But if when he has been in keeping some time, you perceive him apt to sweat in the night, it is a sign he is over-fed, and wants exercise; but if he sweat at his first coming from grass, then there is reason to add rather than diminish the cloath before directed for him at his first housing; for it proceeds from the foul humours that oppress nature, and when they are evacuated by exercise, nature will cease working, and he will continue in a temperate state of body all the year after.

When you have cloathed him up, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, and wash his hoofs clean with a sponge dipped in clean water, and dry them with straw or a linen cloth, then leave him on his snaffle for an hour or more, which will assist his appetite.

Then visit him again, dust a handful of hay, and let the horse teaze it out of your hand, till he hath eaten it; then pull off his bridle, and rub his head and neck clean with your hempen-cloth; pull his ears and stop his nostrils,

trills, to cause him to snort, which will bring away the moist humours which oppress his brain, and then put on his collar, and give him a quartern of oats clean dressed in a sieve, having first cleaned his locker or manger with a wisp of straw and a cloth.

While he is eating his corn, sweep out your stable, and see that all things are neat about him; then turn up his cloaths, and rub his fillets, buttocks, and gaskins, over with the hair patch, and after that with a woollen cloth; then spread a clean flannel fillet cloth over his fillets and buttocks, (which will make his coat lie smooth) and turn down his housing-cloths upon it; then anoint his hoofs round from the coronet to the toe with this ointment.

Take 4 ounces of *Venice turpentine*, 3 ounces of the best *rosin*, of bee's wax, 2 ounces, 1 pound of *dog's grease*, and half a pint of *train oil*; melt all these ingredients together, except the *turpentine*; then take them off the fire, and put in the *turpentine*, stirring it till it be well incorporated; then pour it out into an earthen gallipot, and keep it for use, but do not cover it till it is cold.

After this, stop his feet with cow-dung. If by this time your horse has eaten his oats with a good stomach, sift him another quartern, and so feed him with little and little, while he eats with an appetite; but if you find he fumbles with his corn, give him no more for that time, but always give him his full feeding, for that will keep his body in better state and temper, and increase his strength and vigour.

Whereas, on the contrary, to keep your horse always sharp-set, is the ready way to procure a surfeit, if at any time he can come at his fill of provender.

But though you should perceive that he gathers flesh too fast upon such home feeding, yet be sure not to stint him for it, but only increase his labour, and that will assist both his strength and wind.

Having

Having done all the things before directed, dust a pretty quantity of hay, and throw it down to him on his litter, after you have taken it up under him ; and then shutting up the windows and stable-door, leave him till one o'clock in the afternoon ; then visit him again, and rub over his head, neck, fillets, buttocks, and legs as before, with the hair patch and woollen cloth, and then leave him to the time of the evening-watering, which should be about four o'clock in the summer, and three in the winter : when having put back his foul litter, and swept away that and his dung, dress and saddle him, as before, mount him and rake him to the water, and when he has drank, gallop him, and air him till you think it time to go home ; where you are to order in all points, as to rubbing, feeding, stopping his feet, &c. as you did in the morning ; and having fed him about six o'clock, do not fail to feed him again at nine, and litter him well, and give him hay enough to serve him all night ; and so leave him till the next morning.

After the directions for this one day, so must you order him for a fortnight, and by that time his flesh will be so hardened, and his wind so improved ; his mouth will be so quickened, and his gallop brought to so good a stroke, that he will be fit to be put to moderate hunting.

Now during this fortnight's keeping, you are to make several observations, as to the nature and disposition of your horse, the temper of his body, the course of his digestion, &c. and to order him accordingly.

1. Whether he be of a churlish disposition ; if so, you must reclaim him by severity.

If of a gentle, familiar, and loving temper, you must engage and win him by kindness.

2. You must observe, whether he be a foul feeder, or of a nice stomach ; if he be quick at his meat, and retain a good stomach, then four times of full feeding
in

in a night and a day are sufficient ; but if he be a slender feeder, and slow at his meat, then you must give him but little at a time, and often, as about every two hours, for fresh meat will draw on his appetite ; and you must always leave a little meat in his locker, for him to eat at leisure betwixt his feeding-times ; and if at any time you find any left, sweep it away and give him fresh, and expose that to the sun and air, which will reduce it again to it's first sweetness as before it was blown upon.

His stomach may also be sharpened by change of meat, as by giving one meal clean oats, and at another oats and split beans, and when you have brought him to eat bread, you may give him another meal of bread ; always observing to give him ofteneft that which you find he likes best ; or you may give him both corn and bread at the same time, provided you give him that last which he eats best, and which is of the best digestion.

It has been observed of some horses, that they are of so hot a constitution, that they cannot eat without drinking at every bit ; and those horses usually carry no belly. You must let a pail of water stand continually before such horses, or at least give them water at noon, besides what they have abroad at their ordinary times.

In the next place, you are to observe the nature of his digestion, whether he retains his food long, which is a sign of bad digestion ; or whether he dungs frequently, which if he does, and his dung be loose and bright, it is a sign of a good habit of body ; but if it be seldom and hard, it is a sign of a dry constitution ; in order to remedy which, give him once a day a handful or two of oats, well washed in good strong *ale*, and this will loosen his body and keep it moist ; and it will also be good for his wind.

The second fortnight's diet for a HUNTING-HORSE.

THE horse having been ordered for the first fortnight, according to the foregoing rules, will be in a pretty good state of body, for the gross humours in him will be dried up, and his flesh will begin to be hardened, which you may perceive by feeling his *chaul*, his *short ribs*, and *flank*; for the kernels under his chaps will not feel so gross as they did at first, nor will his flesh on his short ribs feel so soft and loose, nor the thin part of his flank so thick as at his first housing, so that you may now without hazard, venture to hunt him moderately.

The time being now come that he may be hunted, he is to be ordered on his days of rest, in all points, as to his dressing, hours of feeding, watering, &c. as in the first fortnight before directed; but only since his labour is now increased, you must endeavour to increase his strength and courage likewise; and this you may effect by adding to his oats a third part of clean old beans, spelted on a mill, and allowing him over and above the following bread.

Take two pecks of clean old beans, and one peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, and sift the meal thro' a meal sieve of an indifferent fineness, and knead it with warm water and good store of yeast; then let it lie an hour, or more, to swell, which will make the bread the lighter, and have the easier and quicker digestion; and after it has been well kneaded, make it up into loaves of a peck a piece, which will prevent there being too much crust, and prevent it's drying too soon; let them be well baked, and stand a good while in the oven to soak; when they are drawn, turn the bottoms upwards and let them stand to cool.

When the bread is a day old, chip away the crust, and you may give the horse some, giving him sometimes bread, sometimes oats, and sometimes oats and
split

split beans, according as you find his stomach : and this feeding will bring him into as good condition as you need to desire for ordinary hunting.

The first fortnight being expired, and the bread prepared, you ought then to pitch upon a day for his going abroad after the dogs, and the day before you hunt, he must always be ordered after this manner.

In the morning proceed in your usual method as before, only observe that day to give him no beans, because they are hard of digestion, but give him most of bread if you can draw him on to eat it, because it is more nourishing than oats ; and after the evening, which ought to be somewhat earlier than at other times, give him only a little hay out of your hand, and no more till the next day that he returns from hunting ; and to prevent his eating his litter, or any thing else but what you give him, instead of a muzzle put on a cavesson, joined to a head-stall of a bridle, lined with leather, for fear of hurting him, and tying it so tight as to hinder his eating ; and this will prevent sickness in your horse, which some horses are incident to when their muzzle is put on, notwithstanding the invention of the lattice window, so much used ; but by taking this method, the horse's nostrils are at full liberty, and he will not grow sick.

But as to his corn, give him his meals, both after his watering, and at nine o'clock, and at that time be sure to litter him well, that he may take his rest the better that night, and then leave him till morning.

The next morning visit him early, at about four o'clock, and put a quarter of a peck of clean dressed oats into his locker, pouring into it a quart of good strong ale, mixing the oats and ale well together ; then put back his dung and foul litter, and clean the stable : but if he will not eat washed oats, give him dry, but be sure not to put any beans to them.

When he has done eating, bridle him, and tie him
up

up to the ring and dress him : having dressed him, saddle him, and throw his cloth over him, and let him stand till the hounds are ready to go out.

Take care not to draw the saddle-girths too streight till you are ready to mount, lest that should cause him to grow sick.

Tho' old horses are generally so crafty, that when a groom goes to girt them up hard, they will extend their bodies so much by holding their wind, (on purpose to gain ease after they are girt) that it will seem difficult to girt them, but when they let go their wind their bodies fall again.

When the hounds are unkennelled, (which should not be before sun-rising) go into the field along with them, and rake your horse up and down gently till a *bare* is started ; always remembering to let him smell to the dung of other horses, if there be any, which will provoke him to empty himself ; and suffer him to stand still till he does so ; and if there be any dead *frogs*, rushes, or the like, ride him upon them, and whistle to him, to provoke him to stale and empty his bladder.

The *bare* being started, follow the hounds as the other hunters do ; but remembering it to be the first time of his hunting, he is not so well acquainted with the different sorts of grounds, as to know how to gallop smoothly and with ease on them, and for that reason you ought not yet to put him to above half his speed, that he may learn to carry a stay'd body, and to manage his legs both upon fallows and green swarth.

Neither should you gallop him often, or any long time together, for fear of discouraging him, and causing a dislike of his exercise in him : and take care to cross fields to the best advantage ; you should make into the hounds at every default, and still keep your horse (as much as these directions will allow you) within the
cry

cry of the dogs, that he may be used to their cry ; and by so doing, in a very short time he will take such delight and pleasure in their music, that he will be eager to follow them.

And if it happen that the chace is led over any carpet-ground, or sandy high-way, on which your horse may lay out his body smoothly, there you may gallop him for a quarter or half a mile, to teach him to lay out his body, to gather up his legs, to lengthen and shorten his stroke, and according to the different earth he gallops on, as if on *green swarth, meadow, moore, heath, &c.* then to stoop and run more on the shoulders ; if amongst *mole-hills*, or over *high-ridges* and *furrows*, then to gallop more roundly or in less compass, or according to the vulgar phrase, *two up and two down*, that thereby he may strike his furrow clear, and avoid setting his fore-feet in the bottom of it, and by that means fall over ; but, by the way, galloping, tho' he should happen to set his feet in a furrow, yet carrying his body so round, and resting on the hand in his gallop, would prevent his falling ; and to this perfection, nothing but use, and such moderate exercise, can bring him.

According to these directions, you may hunt till about three o'clock in the afternoon, at which time ride him home in a foot-pace, as you came out in the morning ; and be sure that you let him walk out of the field ; and as you are going home, consider whether he hath sweat a little, (for you must not sweat him much the first time) but if not, then gallop him gently on some skelping earth, till he sweat at the roots of his ears, a little on his neck, and in his flank ; but it must be done of his own voluntary motion, without the compulsion of whip or spur ; and then when he is cool as aforesaid, have him home and stable him, and by no means walk him in hand to cool him, for fear of his cooling too fast, nor do not wash him, for fear of
causing

causing an obstruction of the natural course of the humours, and by that means cause an inflammation in his legs, which is the original cause of the scratches.

His stall being well littered against he comes home, set him up, tying his head to the ring with the bridle, and then rub him well down with dry straw all over his head, neck, fore-bowels, belly, flank, buttocks, and legs, and after that rub his body over with a dry cloth, till he has not a wet hair left about him; after you have done, take off his saddle, and rub the place where the saddle was, dry, in like manner, and cloath him immediately with his ordinary cloaths, lest he take cold; and if you suppose him to be very hot, throw a spare cloth over him, that he may not cool too fast, which you may abate when you please, and so let him stand on his snaffle, two hours or better, now and then stirring him in his stall with your whip, to prevent him from growing stiff in the legs and joints.

When that time is expired, and you think he is thorough cold, draw his bridle, rub his head, pick his feet, from dirt or gravel, and put on his collar, and give him a quart or three pints of sifted oats, mixt with a handful of clean dressed hempseed; but give him not more than the quantity prescribed, for fear of taking away his stomach, which will be very much weakened through the heat of his body, and want of water.

Then take off the spare cloth, (if it has not been done before) for fear of keeping him hot too long, and when he has eaten his corn, throw a pretty quantity of hay, clean dusted, on his litter, and let him rest two or three hours, or thereabouts.

Then having prepared him a good mash, made of half a peck of malt, well ground, and boiling hot water, so much as the malt will sweeten and the horse will drink, stir them well together, and cover it over with a cloth, till the water has extracted the strength of
the

the malt, which will be almost as sweet as honey, and feel ropy like birdlime; being but little or more than blood warm, give it the horse, but not before, lest the steam go up his nostrils and offend him, and when he has drank up the water, let him, if he please, eat the malt too.

But if he refuse to drink it, you must not give him any other water that night, but place this drink in some place of his stall, so that he may not throw it down, and let it stand by him all night, that he may drink it when he pleases.

This mash, or as it is called, *horse-caudle*, will comfort his stomach, and keep his body in a due temperate heat after his day's hunting; it will cleanse and bring away all manner of grease and gross humours, which have been dissolved by the days labour; and the fume of the malt-grains, after he has drank the water, will disperse the watery humours which might otherwise annoy his head, and is allowed by all skilled in horses, to be very advantageous on that account.

After he has eaten his mash, strip him of his cloaths, and run him over with a *curry-comb*, *French brush*, *hair-patch*, *woollen* and *cloth*, and cloath him up again; and cleanse his legs as well as his body, of all dirt and filth which may annoy them, and then remove him into another stall, (that you may not wet his litter) and bathe his legs all over from the knees, with warm *beef broth*, or (which is better) with a quart of warm urine, in which four ounces of *salt-petre* has been dissolved; then rub his legs dry, set him again into his stall, and give him a good home-feeding of oats, or bread, which he likes best or both, and having shook good store of litter under him, that he may rest the better; and thrown him hay enough for all night, shut the stable door close, and leave him to his rest till the next morning.

About six or seven o'clock the next morning, go to him again, but don't disturb him, for the morning's
rest

rest is as refreshing to a horse as to a man; but when he rises of his own accord go to him, put back his dung from his litter, and observe what colour it is of, whether it be greasy, and shine outwardly, and also break it with your feet, to see if it be so inwardly, for if it be greasy and foul, (which you may know by it's shining outwardly, and by the spots like soap that will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown colour, and harder than it was, it is a token that the hunting of the day before has done him good, by dissolving part of the inward *glut* which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt, you should increase his labour but a little.

But if you perceive no such symptoms, but that his dung appears bright, but rather *soft* than *hard*, without grease, and in a word, that it holds the same pale yellow colour that it did before he hunted, that it is a sign that a day's hunting made no *dissolution*, but that his body remains in the same state still, and therefore the next day's hunting you may almost double his labour.

Having made these remarks on his *dung*, then you may proceed to order him as on his days of rest; that is to say, you shall give him a handful or two of *oats* before water, then dress, water, air, feed, &c. as in the first fortnight.

As to his feeding, you must not forget to change his food, as has been before directed; that is, to give him one while bread, another while oats, and a third time oats and beans, which you find he likes best; always remembring, that variety will sharpen his appetite; but bread being his chief food, as being more nourishing and strong than the others, feed him the oftner with it.

And as has been directed in the first fortnight, observe his *digestion* whether it be quick or slow; so likewise must you do when he begins to eat *bread*.

If you find him quick, and that he retains his bread but a little while, then only chip his bread lightly ; but if it be slow, and he retains it long, then cut away all the crust and give it to some other horse, and feed the hunting-horse only with the *crumb*, for that being light of digestion, is soon converted into chyle and excrements, but the *crust* being not so soon digestible, requires, by reason of it's hardness, longer time before it is concocted.

The next day after your horse has rested, you may hunt him again as you did the first day, observing from the remarks you have made, to hunt him more or less according as you find his temper and constitution ; and when you come home, put in practice the rules just now given.

And thus you may hunt him three times a week for a fortnight together, but don't fail to give him his full feeding, and no other *scourings* but meshes and hemp-feed, which is equal in it's virtue with the former, and only carries off superfluous humours in the dung.

The third fortnight's diet, &c. for a HUNTING-HORSE.

By this time the horse will be drawn so clean, his flesh will be so enseamed, and his wind so improved, that he will be able to ride a chace of three or four miles without blowing or sweating ; and you may find by his *chaul* and *flank*, as well as his *ribs*, that he is in an indifferent good state of body, and therefore in this next fortnight you must increase his labour, and by that means you will be able to make a judgment what he will be able to do, and whether or no he will be ever fit for running for *plates*, or a *match*.

When your horse is set over night, and fed early in the morning, as has been directed for the second fortnight, then go into the field with him, and when he is empty, (as he will be by that time you have started your game) follow the dogs at a good round rate,

rate, as at half speed, and so continue till you have either killed or lost your first *hare*.

This will so rack your horse, and he will have so emptied himself, that he will be in a fit condition to be rid the next chace briskly, which as soon as it is begun, you may follow the dogs at three quarters speed, and as near as is fit for a good horseman, and skilful huntsman; but be sure to take care not to strain him.

During this day's riding, you ought to observe nicely, your horse's *sweat* under his *saddle* and *fore-bowels*, and if it appear white, like froth or soap-suds, it is a sign of inward glut and foulness, and that your day's exercise was enough for him, therefore ride him home, and order him as before directed.

But if it has happened that your exercise has been so easy as not to sweat your horse thoroughly, then you ought to make a train scent of four miles in length, or thereabouts, and laying on your fleetest dogs, ride it briskly, and afterwards cool him in the field, and ride him home and order him as has been before directed.

A *train scent*, is the trailing of a dead cat or fox, (and in case of necessity a red herring) three or four miles, according as the rider shall please, and then laying the dogs on the scent.

It will be proper to keep two or three couple of the fleetest hounds that can possibly be procured, for this purpose.

It is true indeed, some skilful sportsmen do make use of their harriers in this case, for their diversion, but it will not be convenient to use them to it often, for it will be apt to induce them to lie off the *line*, and fling so wide, that they will not be worth any thing.

When you take off your horse's bridle, give him a good quantity of *rye-bread* instead of *hemp-seed* and

eats, and for that purpose bake a peck-loaf, for this being cold and moist, will be of use to cool his body after his labour, and prevent costiveness, to which you will find him addicted; then give him hay, and afterwards a mash, and order him in all things as before directed.

The next morning, if you perceive by his *ding* that his body is distempered, and that he is hard and bound, then take some crumbs of your rye-bread, and work it with as much sweet fresh butter as will make it into a paste, and make it up into balls about the bigness of a large walnut, of which give him five or six in a morning fasting.

After this put the saddle on upon the cloth, get up and gallop him gently upon some grass-plat or close that is near at hand, till he begin to sweat under his ears, and then carry him into the stable again, rub him well, and throw a spare cloth over him, and a good quantity of fresh litter under him, and let him stand two hours on the bridle; then give him a quantity of *rye-bread*, and some *hay* to chew upon, then procure him a warm mash, and feed him with bread and corn, as much as he will eat, and also as much hay as he will eat.

The next day water him abroad, and order him as is before directed for days of rest.

The next day you may hunt him again, but not so hard as you did the time before, till the afternoon; but then ride him after the dogs briskly, and if that does not make him sweat thoroughly, make another *train-scent*, and follow the dogs three quarters speed, that he may sweat heartily: then cool him a little, and ride him home, and as soon as he is come into the stable, give him two or three balls as big as walnuts, of the following excellent scouring.

Take of *butter*, eight ounces; *lemnive electuary*, four ounces; *gromwel*, *broom*, and *pursly-seeds*, of each two ounces;

ounces ; *anniseeds*, *liquorice*, and *cream of tartar*, of each one ounce ; of *jalap*, two ounces ; reduce the seeds to a powder, then stir them into a paste with the *electuary* and *butter*, knead it well together, put it into a pot, and keep it close stopped for use.

As soon as the horse has taken these balls, rub him dry, dress him, and cloath him warm, and let him stand two or three hours upon the snaffle ; and afterwards give him two or three handfuls of rye-bread, and order him as you have been directed before, as to hay, provender, mash, &c. and so leave him till the morning.

In the morning take notice of his dung, whether it still retains the true colour, or be *dark*, or *black*, or *red* and *high-coloured* : in the next place, whether it be loose and thin, or hard and dry.

If it be of a *pale yellow*, which is the right colour, it is a sign of health, strength, and cleanness ; if it be *dark*, or *black*, then it is a sign there is *grease* and other ill humours stirred up, which are not yet evacuated : if it be *red* and *high-coloured*, then it is a sign that his blood is feverish and distempered, by means of inward heat : if it be loose and thin, it is a sign of weakness ; but if hard and dry, it shews the horse to be hot inwardly, or else that he is a foul feeder : but if his dung be in a medium between hard and soft, and smell strong, it is a sign of health and vigour.

When these observations have been made on his dung, then *feed*, *dress*, *water*, &c. as on his usual days of rest, always letting him have variety, and his fill of *corn* and *bread*.

The next day have him abroad into the field again, but do not by any means put him to any labour more than raking him from hill to hill after the dogs, keeping him within sound of their cry ; for the intent of this day's exercise, is only to keep him in breath, and procure him an appetite.

In riding, let him stand still to dung, and look back on it, that you may be able to judge of his state thereby.

When the day is near spent, ride him home without the least sweat, and order him as at other times, except that you are not to give him any *scourings*, or *rye-bread*.

You may, if you please, this day, water your horse both at going into the field, and coming out, *galloping* him after it, to warm the water in his belly.

The next day being to be a day of rest, order him in the same manner in every respect as on other days of rest, and as you have spent this week, you must spend the next, without any alteration; and by this time, and this management, you may depend upon it that your horse has been drawn clean enough for ordinary hunting.

So that afterwards, only taking care to hunt your horse with moderation twice or three times a week, at your pleasure, and according to the constitution of your horse's body, you need not question but to have him in as good state and strength as you can desire, without danger of his *wind*, *eye-sight*, *feet*, or *body*.

Having thus drawn your horse clean, according to art, you will perceive those signs before-mentioned very plainly, for his flesh on his short ribs and buttocks will be as hard as *brawn*, his *flank* will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double skin, and *chaps* so clean from *fat*, *glut*, or *kernels*, that you may hide your fists in them; and above all, this exercise will give plain demonstration of the effectualness of this method of ordering him, for he will run three or four miles three quarters speed without sweating, or scarce so much as blowing.

When the horse has been brought to this state, you must use no more *scourings* after hunting, (because nature has nothing to work on) but *rye-bread* and
mash,

masn, except the horse be now and then troubled with some little pose in his head; and then bruise a little mustard-seed in a fine linnen rag, and steep it in a quart of strong ale, for three or four hours, and then untying the rag, mix the mustard-seed and the ale with a quarter of a peck of oats, and give it to him.

In the last place, the horse having been thus drawn clean, you ought to take care not to let him grow foul again, through want of either *airing* or *hunting*, or any other negligence, lest by that means you make your self a double trouble.

Of breeding HUNTING and RACE-HORSES.

Procure either an *Arabian*, a *Spanish*, a *Turkish* horse, or a *Barb* for a *Stallion*, which is well shaped, and of a good colour to beautify your race; and some advise that he be well marked too, tho' others are of opinion, that marks are not so significant as Mr. *Blundeville* and *Frederigo Griffone* would have us believe.

Those who have travelled into those parts, report, that the right *Arabian* horses are valued at an almost incredible rate, at five hundred, and others say, two or three thousand pounds an horse; that the *Arabs* are as careful of keeping the genealogies of their horses, as Princes are in keeping their pedigrees; that they keep them with medals; and that each son's portion is usually two suits of arms, two cymetars, and one of these *horses*. The *Arabs* boast, that they will ride eighty miles a-day without drawing bitt; which is no more than has been perform'd by several of our *English* horses.

But much more was perform'd by a highwayman's horse, who having committed a robbery, rode on the same day from *London* to *York*, being an hundred and fifty miles.

Notwithstanding their great value, and the difficulty

in bringing them from *Scanderoon* to *England* by sea; yet by the care and charge of some breeders in the north, the *Arabian* horse is no stranger to those parts, where probably may be seen at this day some of the race, if not a true *Arabian* stallion.

The *Spanish* horse (in the Duke of *Newcastle's* opinion) is the noblest horse in the world, and the most beautiful that can be; no horse is so beautifully shaped all over from *head* to *croup*, as he is absolutely the best *stallion* in the world, either for breed, for the manage, the war, the pad, hunting, or running-horses; but as they are excellent, so is their price extravagant, three or four hundred pistoles being a common price for a *Spanish* horse.

Several have been sold for seven hundred, eight hundred, and a thousand pistoles a-piece.

The best *Spanish* horses are bred in *Andalusia*, and particularly at *Cordoua*, where the King has many studs of mares, and so likewise have several of the *Spanish* nobility and gentry,

Now besides the great price they cost at first, the charges of the journey from *Spain* to *England*, will be very considerable; for first they must travel from *Andalusia* to *Bilboa*, or *St. Sebastian*, the nearest ports to *England*, and is at least four hundred miles: and in that hot country, you cannot with safety travel your horse above twenty miles a-day; and besides, you must be at the expence of a *Groom* and *Farrier*, besides the casualty of sickness, lameness, and death: so that if he should happen to prove an extraordinary good horse, by the time you have got him home, he will also be an extraordinary dear one.

The *Turkish* horse is but little inferior to the *Spanish* in beauty, but somewhat odd shaped, his head being something like that of a *camel*; he hath excellent eyes, a thin neck, excellently risen, and somewhat large of body; his *croup* is like that of a mule, his legs not so under-

under-limbed as those of a *Barb*, but very finewy, good pasterns, and good hoofs: they never amble, but trot very well, and are at present accounted better stallions for gallopers than *Barbs*.

Some merchants tell us, that there cannot be a more noble and diverting sight to a lover of horses, than to walk into the pastures near *Constantinople*, about foiling-time, where he may see many hundred gallant horses tethered, and every horse has his attendant or keeper, with his little tent placed near him to lie in, that he may look to him, and take care to shift him to fresh grass.

The price of a *Turkish* horse, is commonly one hundred, or one hundred and fifty pound; and when bought, it is difficult to get a pass, the Grand Signior being so very strict, that he seldom (but upon very extraordinary occasions) permits any of his horses to be exported out of his dominions.

But if you should attain a liberty so to do, and travel by land, unless you have a *Turk* or two for a convoy, you will be sure to have them seized on by the way.

And besides, you will find the same difficulties of a long journey, for you must come through *Germany*, which is a very long way, and the same charges attending it, that is, a Groom and Farrier, who must be careful that they entrust no person whatsoever with the care of him but themselves, especially in shoeing him, for 'tis the common practice beyond sea, as well as here, wherever they see a fine horse, to hire a farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a stallion.

But some persons chuse to buy horses at *Smyrna* in *Anatolia*, and from thence, and likewise from *Constantinople*, to transport them to *England* by sea, which if the wind serve right, arrive in *England* in a month; tho' generally the merchants voyages are not made in much less than two or three months.

The *Barb* is little inferior to any of the former in beauty ; but our modern breeders account him too slender and *lady like* to breed on, and therefore in the north of *England* they prefer the *Spanish* and *Turkish* horse before him.

He is so lazy and negligent in his walk, that he will stumble on carpet-ground.

His trot is like that of a cow, his gallop low, and with much ease to himself ; but he is for the most part sinewy and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a *course* if he be not over weighed.

The mountain *Barbs* are esteem'd the best, because they are strongest and largest : they belong to the *Al-larbes*, who value them themselves as much as other nations do, and therefore will not part with them to any persons, except to the *Prince of the land* to which they belong, who can at any time at his pleasure command them for his own use : but for the other more ordinary sort, they are to be met with pretty common in the hands of our Nobility and Gentry ; or if you send to *Languedoc*, or *Provence*, in *France*, they may be bought there for forty or fifty pistoles a-horie.

Or if you send to *Barbary*, you may buy one for thirty pounds, or thereabouts ; but in this case too, the charges and journey will be great, for tho' it be no great voyage from *Tunis* to *Marseilles* in *France*, yet from *Marseilles* to *Calais*, by land, is the whole length of *France*, and from thence they are shipped for *England*.

The next thing to be considered, is the choice of *mares*, and according to the Duke of *Newcastle's* opinion, the fittest mare to breed out of, is one that has been bred of an *English* mare, and a stallion of either of these races ; but if you can't get such a mare, then get a right bred *English* mare by *fire* and *dam*, that is well *fore-handed*, well *underlaid*, and strong put together in general ; and in particular, see that she have a

lean

lean head, wide nostrils, open chaul, a big weasand, and the wind-pipe strait and loose ; and of about five or six years old ; and be sure that the stallion be not too old.

As for the Food of the STALLION ;

Keep him as high as possibly you can, for the first four or five months before the time of *covering*, with old clean *oats* and *split beans*, well hull'd, and if you please you may add bread to them, such as you will hereafter be directed to make ; and now and then a handful of clean wheat may be given him, or oats washed in strong ale, for variety.

Mr. *Morgan* advises to scatter bay salt and anniseeds in his provender ; but others are of opinion that this is superfluous, while the horse is in health.

Be sure to let him have plenty of good *old sweet hay*, well cleansed from dust, and good wheat straw to lie on ; water him twice a-day, at some fair running stream, or else in a clear standing pond water, if you cannot have the first ; and gallop him after he hath drank, in some meadow or level piece of ground.

Do not suffer him to drink his fill at his first coming to the water, but after his first draught, gallop and scope him up and down to warm him, and then bring him to the water again and let him drink his fill, galloping him again as before, never leaving the water till he has drank as much as he will.

By this means you will prevent raw crudities, which the coldness of the water would otherwise produce, to the detriment of his stomach, if you had permitted him to drink his fill at first ; whereas you allowing him his fill (tho' by degrees) at last, you keep his body from drying too fast.

Mr. *Morgan* indeed, directs the sweating of him every day, early in the morning, which he says will not only perfect digestion, and exhaust the moisture

from his seed, but also strengthen and cleanse his blood and body from all raw and imperfect humours : but others are of opinion it will dry up the *radical moisture* too fast ; and likewise, instead of heightening his pride and lust, weaken him too much.

As for other rules for the ordering him after watering, and the hours of feeding, &c. they will be more proper.

When the stallion is in lust, and the time of covering him is come, which is best to be in *May*, that the foals may fall in the *April* following, otherwise they will have little or no grass ;

Then pull off his hinder shoes, and lead him to the place where the stud of *mares* are which you intend for covering ; which place ought to be close, well fenced, and in it a little hut for a man to lie in, and a larger shed with a manger, to feed your stallion with bread and corn during his abode with the mares, and shelter for him in the *heat of the day*, and in *rainy weather* : and this close ought to be of sufficient largeness to keep mares well for two months.

Before you pull off his bridle, let him cover a mare, or two in hand, then turn him loose among them, and put all your mares to him, as well those that are with foal, as those which are not, for there is no danger in it ; and by that means they will all be served in the height of their lust, and according to the *intention of nature*.

When your stallion has covered them once, he will try them all over again, and those that will admit him, he will serve, and when he has done his business, he will beat against the pales, and attempt to be at liberty, which when your man finds, (who is to observe them night and day, and to take care that no other mares are put to your horse, and to give you an account which take the horse, and which not, &c.) then take him up, and keep him well as you did before, first giving

giving him a mash or two, to help to restor nature; for you will find him little but skin and bones, and his *mane* and *tail* will rot off.

Be sure never to give him above ten or twelve mares in a season at most, otherwise you will scarce recover him against the next covering time.

When your stallion is past this use, then buy another, for the best kind will in time degenerate. But the Duke of *Newcastle* says, you cannot do better than to let your own mares be covered by their fires.

Some advise to *covering in hand*, as the other is called *covering out of hand*, and is as follows: When you have brought both your horse and your mare to a proper condition for breeding, by art and good feeding, then set some ordinary stone nag by her for a day or two, to woo her, and that will make her so prone to lust, that she will readily receive your stallion, which you should present to her, either early in a morning or late in an evening, for a day or two together, and let him cover in hand once or twice, if you please, at each time observing to give the horse the advantage of ground, and have a person ready with a bucket of cold water to throw on the mare's shap immediately upon the dismounting of the horse, which will make her retain the seed she received the better; especially if you get on her back, and trot her up and down for a quarter of an hour, but take care of heating or straining her; and it will not be amiss if you let them fast two hours after such act, and then give each of them a warm mash, and it is odds but this way your mares may be as well served as the other, and your stallion will last you much longer.

If you take care to house the mares all the winter, and keep them well, their colts will prove the better.

*Of riding a HUNTING-MATCH, or HEATS
for a PLATE.*

In order to ride to the best advantage, either a hunting-match, or three heats and a courie for a plate.

The first thing requisite is a *rider*, who ought to be a faithful one, in whom you can confide; and he should have a good close seat, his knees being held firm to his saddle-skirts, his toes being turned inwards, and his spurs outwards from the horse's sides, his left hand governing the horse's mouth, and his right commanding the whip; taking care, during the whole time of the trial, to sit firm in the saddle, without waving, or standing up in the stirrups, which actions do very much incommode a horse, notwithstanding the conceited opinion of some jockies, that it is a becoming feat.

In spurring his horse, he should not strike him hard with the calves of his legs, as if he would beat the wind out of his body, but just turning his toes outwards, and bringing his spurs quick to his sides; and such a sharp stroke will be of more service towards the quickening of the horse, and sooner draw blood.

Let him be sure never to spur him but when there is occasion, and avoid spurring him under the fore-bowels, between his shoulders and girths, near the heart, (which is the tenderest place of a horse) till the last extremity.

As to the whipping the horse, it ought to be over the shoulder on the near side, except upon hard running, and when you are at all, then strike the horse in the flank with a strong jerk, the skin being tenderest there, and most sensible of the lash.

He must observe, when he whips and spurs his horse, and is certain that he is at the top of his speed, if then he claps his ears in his pole, or whisks his tail, then he may be sure that he bears him hard; and then he
ought

ought to give him as much comfort as he can, by *sawing* his snaffle to and fro in his mouth, and by this means forcing him to open his mouth, which will comfort him and give him wind.

If in the time of riding there is any high wind stirring, if it be in his face, he should let the adversary lead, he holding hard behind him till he sees an opportunity of giving a loose; yet he must take care to keep so close to him, that his adversary's horse may break the wind from his, and that he, by stooping low in his seat, may shelter himself under him, which will assist the strength of his horse.

But on the contrary, if the wind be at his back, he must ride exactly behind him, that his own horse may alone enjoy the benefit of the wind, by being as it were blown forward, and by breaking it from his adversary as much as possible.

In the next place, observe what ground your horse delights most to run on, and bear the horse (as much as your adversary will give you leave) on level carpet ground, because the horse will naturally be desirous to spend him more freely thereon; but on deep earths give him more liberty, because he will naturally favour himself thereupon.

If you are to run up hill, don't forget by any means to favour your horse, and bear him, for fear of running him out of wind; but if it be down hill, (if your horse's feet and shoulders will endure it, and you dare venture your neck) always give him a loose.

This may be observed as a general rule, that if you find your horse to have the heels of the other, that then you be careful to preserve his speed till the last train-scent, if you are not to run a strait course; but if so, then till the end of the course, and so to husband it then also, that you may be able to make a push for it at the last post.

In the next place you are to acquaint yourself, as well

well as you can, of the nature and temper of your adversary's horse, and if he be fiery, then to run just behind, or just cheek by jowl, and with your whip make as much noise as you can, that you may force him on faster than his rider would have him, and by that means spend him the sooner; or else keep just before him, on such a slow gallop, that he may either overreach, or by treading on your horse's heels, (if he will not take the leading) endanger falling over.

Take notice also on what ground your opponent's horse runs the worst, and be sure to give a loose on that earth, that he being forced to follow you, may be in danger of stumbling, or clapping on the back sinews.

In the like manner, in your riding observe the several *helps* and *corrections* of the *hand*, the *whip*, and *spur*, and when, and how often he makes use of them; and when you perceive that his horse begins to be *blown*, by any of the former symptoms, as clapping down his ears, whisking his tail, holding out his nose like a pig, &c. you may then take it for granted that he is at the height of what he can do; and therefore in this case, take notice how your own rides, and if he run chearfully and strongly, without spurring, then be sure to keep your adversary to the same speed, without giving him ease, and by so doing, you will quickly bring him to give out, or else distance him.

Observe at the end of every *train-scent* what condition the other horse is in, and how he holds out in his labour, of which you may be able to make a judgment by his looks, the working of his flank, and the slackness of his girths.

For if he look dull, it is a sign that his spirits fail him; if his flanks beat much, it is a token that his wind begins to fail him, and consequently his strength will do so too.

If his wind fail him, then his body will grow thin,
and

and appear tuckt up, which will make his girths, to the eye, seem to be slack ; and therefore you may take this for a rule, that a horse's wanting girting, after the first scent, provided he were girt close at his first starting is a good sign, and if you find it so, you need not much despair of winning the wager.

After the end of every *train-scent*, and also after every heat for a plate, you must have dry straw and dry cloaths, both linen and woollen, which have been steeped in *urine* and *salt-petre* a day or two and then dried in the sun, and also one or two of each must be brought into the field wet ; and after the train has been ended, two or three persons must help you, and after the groom has with a knife of heat, (as it is called by the Duke of *Newcastle*) which is a piece of an old sword blade scraped off all the sweat from the horse's neck, body, &c. then they must rub him well down dry, all over, first with the dry straw, and then with dry cloths, whilst others are busy about his legs, and as soon as they have rubbed him dry, then let them chafe them with the wet cloths, and never give over till you are called by the judges to start again.

This will render his joints pliant and nimble, and prevent any inflammation which might arise from any old strain.

The next thing to be regarded, are the judges or triers office, who are to see that all things are ordered according to the articles agreed on, which to that end ought to be read before the horses start.

Next, that each trier on whose side the train is to be led, according to the articles give directions for it's leading, according to the advice of the *rider*, or his knowledge of the nature and disposition of that horse on whose side he is chose.

Next, that each *trier* be so advantageously mounted, as to ride up behind the horses (but not upon them) all day, and to observe that the contrary horse ride his true

true ground, and observe the articles in every particular, or else not to permit him to proceed.

Next, that after each *train-scent* be ended, each *trier* look to that horse against which he is chosen, and observe that he be no ways relieved but with rubbing, except liberty on both sides be given to the contrary.

Next, as soon as the time allowed for rubbing be expired, which is generally half an hour, they shall command them to mount, and if either rider refuse, it may be lawful for the other to start without him; and having beat him the distance agreed on, the wager is to be adjudged on his side.

Next, the *triers* shall keep off all other horses from crossing the *riders*; only they themselves may be allowed to instruct the *riders* by word of mouth how to ride, whether slow or fast, according to the advantages he perceives may be gained by his directions.

Lastly, if there be any weight agreed on, they shall see that both horses bring their true weight to the starting-place, and carry it to the end of the train, upon the penalty of losing the wager.

The same rules are to be observed, especially this last, by those gentlemen which are chosen to be *judges* at a race for a plate, only they usually stay in a stand, that they may the better see which horse wins the heat.

Now in running for a *plate*, there are not so many observations to be made, nor more directions required, than what have been already given, only this, if you know your horse to be tough at bottom, and that he will stick at mark, to ride him each heat according to the best of his performance, and avoid as much as possible either riding at any particular horse, or staying for any, but to ride each heat throughout with the best speed you can.

But if you have a very fiery horse to manage, or one that is hard mouth'd and difficult to be held, then
start

start him behind the rest of the horses, with all the coolness and gentleness imaginable; and when you find that he begins to ride at some command, then put up to the other horses, and if you find they ride at their ease, and are hard held, then endeavour to draw them on faster; but if you find their wind begin to rake hot, and that they want a sob, if your horse be in wind, and you have a loose in your hand, keep them up to their speed till you come within three quarters of a mile of the end of the heat, and then give a loose and push for it, and leave to fortune and the goodness of your horse, the event of your success.

Lastly, when either your *hunting-match*, or the *trial* for the *plate* is ended, as soon as you have rubbed your horse dry, cloth him up and ride him home, and the first thing, give him the following drink to comfort him.

Beat the yolks of three eggs, and put them into a pint and a half of sweet milk, then warm it lukewarm, and put to it three penny worth of saffron, and three spoonfuls of fallad oil, and give it him in a horn.

Having done this, dress him slightly over with the curry-comb, brush, and woollen-cloth, and then bathe the place where the saddle stood with warm sack, to prevent warbles; and wash the spurring-places with piss and salt, and afterwards anoint them with turpentine and powder of *jett*, mixed together; then litter the stable very well, clothing him up as quick as possible, and let him stand for two hours.

Then feed him with *rye-bread*, after that with a good mash, and give him his belly full of hay, and what corn and bread he will eat.

Then bathe his legs well with urine and salt-petre, leave him corn in his locker, and so let him rest till the

the next morning, at which time order him as before directed in his days of rest.

How to order a horse for a match or Plate.

When you have matched your horse, or design to put him in for a a plate, you ought to consider that you ought to reserve a month at least, to draw his body perfectly clean, and to refine his wind to that degree of perfection that is capable of being attained by art.

In the first place, take an exact view of the state of his body, both outwardly and inwardly, as whether he be *low* or *high* in flesh, or whether he be dull and heavy when abroad, and if this has been caused by too hard riding, or by means of some grease that has been dissolved by hunting, and has not been removed by scouring.

If he appear *sluggish* and *melancholy* from either of these causes, then give him half an ounce of *diapente* in a pint of good old *Malaga* sack, which will both cleanse his body and revive his spirits.

Then for the first week, feed him continually with *bread*, *oats*, and *split beans*, giving him sometimes the one and sometimes the other, according to what he likes best, always leaving him some in his locker for him to eat at leisure when you are absent; and when you return at your hours of feeding, take away what is left and give him *fresh*, till you have made him wanton and playful.

To this purpose, take notice, that tho' you ride him every day morning and evening, on airing, and every other day on hunting, yet you are not to sweat him, or put him to any violent labour, the design of this week's ordering being to keep him in wind and breath, and to prevent *pursiveness*.

But take notice of this, that your *oats*, *beans*, and *bread*, are now to be ordered after another manner than
what

what they were before ; for first, the oats must be well dried in the sun, and then put into a clean bag and soundly beat with a flail or cudgell, till you think they are hulled, then take them out of the bag and winnow them clean, both from hulls and dust, and give them to your horse as there is occasion.

After the same manner must you order your beans, separating them from the hulls, which are apt to breed the *glut*, and must either be thrown away, or given among chaff to some more ordinary horse.

And as for the *bread*, which was only chipt before, now the crust must be cut clean off, and be otherwise disposed of, it being hard of digestion, and will be apt to heat and dry the horse's body ; and besides, you must make a finer bread than before, as follows.

Take two pecks of beans, and a peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, but not too fine, to prevent too much bran being in the bread ; and dress one peck of the meal through a fine range, and knead it up with new ale yeast, and the whites of a dozen new-laid eggs, and bake this in a loaf by it self ; but dress the rest of the meal through a boulder, and kneed it only with ale and yeast, and use it in all other points as the former : the peck loaf is to be given the horse when you set him, and the other at ordinary times.

This bread assists nature, and does very much increase the *strength*, *courage*, and *wind* of the horse, (provided there be added to it true labour) as any bread whatsoever.

Having treated of the condition of those horses which are melancholy and low of flesh, I shall now speak of those which are brisk and lively : If your horse be so, that when you lead him out of the stable he will leap and play about you, then you must not only omit giving him the scouring of sack and *diapente*, but any other whatsoever, for there being no foul humours, nor superfluous matter left in his body, for the
 phyfic

physic to work upon, it will prey upon the strength of his body, and by that means weaken it.

If your horse be engaged in a hunting-match, you must sweat him twice this week, but not by hunting him after the *hare*, but by *train-scents*, since the former on this occasion may prove deceitful; for tho' the hounds should be very swift, yet the scent being cold, the dogs will very often be at fault, and by that means the horse will have many fobs: so that when he comes to run train-scents in earnest, he will expect ease for his wind.

Therefore lead your train-scents with a dead cat, over such grounds as you are likely to run on, and best agrees with the humour of your horse, and also chuse the fleetest hounds you can get, and they will keep your horse up to the height of his speed.

As to the number of *train-scents* that you should ride at a time, that is to be ordered according to the match you are to run, or rather according to the strength of your horse, and ability for performing his heats; for if you labour him beyond his strength, it will take him off his speed, weaken his limbs, and daunt his spirit.

If you give him too little exercise, it will render him liable to be purfivè, and full of ill humours, as glut, &c. and incline him to a habit of laziness, so that when he comes to be put to labour beyond his usual rate, he will grow restive and settle, like a jade.

But so far may be said by way of direction, that if you are to run eight *train-sets*, and the strait course, more or less, you are to put him to such severe labour, not above twice in the whole month's keeping.

And if it be in the first fortnight, it will be the better, for then he will have a whole fortnight to recover his strength in again; and as for his labour in his last fortnight, let it be proportionate to his strength and
wind,

wind, as sometimes half his task, and then three quarters of it.

Only observe, that the last trial you make in the first fortnight, be a train-scent more than your match, for by that means you will find what he is able to do.

And as to the proportion of his exercise twice a week, that is sufficient to keep him in breath, and yet will not diminish or injure his vigour.

But if your hunting-match be to run fewer trains, then you may put him to his whole task the oftner, according as you find him in condition ; only observe, that you are not to strain him for ten days at least, before he ride his match, that he may be led into the field in perfect strength and vigour.

If you design your horse for a *Plate*, let him take his heats according to this direction, only let him be on the place, that he may be acquainted with the ground ; and as for the hounds, you may omit them, as not being tied to their speed, but that of your adversary's horse.

But as to the number of heats, let them be according to what the articles exact ; only observe, that, as to the sharpness of them, they must be regulated according to his strength, and the goodness of his wind.

And when you heat him, provide some horses upon the course to run against him ; this will quicken his spirits and encourage him, when he finds he can command them at his pleasure.

And here you must observe the same rule, not to give the horse a bloody heat for ten days, or a fortnight, before the plate be to run for ; and let the last heat you give him before the day of trial be in all his cloths, and just skelp it over, which will make him run the next time the more vigorously, when he shall be stript naked, and feel the cold air pierce him.

During this month, and on his resting-days, and after his sweats on heating-days, (if there be any occasion

casion for sweating him) you must observe the same rules which have been given for the first week of the third fortnight's keeping, only you must omit all scourings but rye-bread and mashes, since your horse being in so perfect a state of body, has no need of any, except you shall judge there is occasion, and that the horse proves thirsty, about eight or nine o'clock at night, you may give him the following julep, to cool and quench his thirst.

Take two quarts of *barley-water*, three ounces of syrup of *violets*, two ounces of syrup of *lemons*, and having mixed them together, give them the horse to drink, and if he refuse, place it so that he may not throw it down, and let it stand by him all night.

During the last fortnight, you must give him dried oats that have been hulled by beating, and having washed half a strike of oats in the whites of a dozen or twenty eggs, stir them together, and let them lie all night to soak, and spread them abroad in the sun the next morning, till they are as dry as they were at first, and so give them to your horse; and when these are spent, prepare another quantity after the same manner. This food is light of digestion, and very good for his wind.

You must order his beans as before, but not give him them so often, if he will eat his oats without them; and as for his bread this time, make that of two parts wheat to one of beans, and order it as before directed.

But if you find your horse inclinable to be costive, then give him oats washed in two or three whites of eggs and ale beaten together, to cool his body and keep it moist.

Give him not any mash for the last week, only the *barley-water* before directed, but let him have his fill of hay, till a day before he is to ride the *match*, when you must give it him more sparingly, that he may have
time

time to digest that he has eaten, and then, and not before, you may muzzle him with your caveßon; and be sure that day, and not till the morning he is led out, to feed him as much as possible, for such a day's labour will require something to maintain his strength.

Therefore in the morning before you are to lead out, give him a toast or two of white bread steeped in sack, which will invigorate him; and when you have done, lead him out into the field.

But if you are to run for a *plate*, which commonly is not till three o'clock in the afternoon, then by all means have him out early in the morning air, that he may empty his body, and when he is come in from airing, feed him with toasts in sack; considering that as too much fullness will endanger his wind, so too long fasting will cause faintness.

When he has eaten what you thought fit to give him, put on his caveßon, and having afterwards soundly chafed his legs with piece-grease and brandy warmed together, or train-oil (which likewise ought to be used daily at noon, for a week before the *match*, or longer if you see cause) shake up his litter and shut the stable up close, and take care that there is no noise made near him, and let him rest till the hour comes that he is to go out into the field.

Of M A R E S.

MARES, the female of the *horse-kind*, is chiefly considered here, under the notion of breeding, in order to propagate their species; therefore such as are designed for this purpose ought to be as free from defects as possible, and should, no more than the stallions, have either moon-eyes, watery-eyes, or blood-shot-eyes; they should have no splaint, spavin, nor curb, nor any natural imperfection, for the colts will take after them; but choice should be made of the

D

best

best and ablest, the high spirited, best coloured, and finest shaped; and the natural defects that may be in the stallion, should be amended in the mare, as well as that which is amiss in the mare, should be repaired in the stallion.

No mares in the world are certainly better to breed on than our *English* ones, provided you suit them to your particular design; as for instance, if you would breed for the *manage* or *pads*, let your mares have fine *foreheads*, with their *heads* well set on, but not too long *legs*, broad *breasts*, large and sparkling *eyes*, and and great *bodies*, that their *foals* may have room enough to lie, with good *limbs* and *feet*: Let them be of a gentle and good disposition, and their *Motions* naturally nimble and graceful; in a word, remember always, that the more good qualities your *mares* have, the better will your *colts* generally prove.

But if you would breed for *racing* or *hunting*, your *mares* must be lighter, with short *backs*, and long *sides*; their *legs* must be something longer, and their *breasts* not so broad; and always chuse such as you are sure have good blood in their veins.

If you have tried the *speed* and *wind* of any particular mare, and find it good, you may the surer expect a good *colt*, provided she be still in her full health and vigour, and not above seven years old, or eight at most; for the younger your breeders are, the better your *colts* will generally be.

A *mare* may be covered when she is passed two years old, though the best time is after four years, when she will nourish her colt best; and though she may breed till thirteen, yet when she is past ten, it does not do so well, for commonly an old mare's colt will be heavy in labour. The proper time for covering, is reckoned from the end of the first quarter to the full moon, or at the full; for those *colts* will be stronger and hardier of nature; whereas 'tis observed in those
that

that are covered after the change, that they will be tender and nice : But before the mare is covered, she should be taken into the house about six weeks, and be well fed with good hay and oats, well sifted, to the end she may have strength and seed to perform the office of generation.

But if you would have your mare certainly conceive, take blood from both sides her neck, near a quart from each vein, about five or six days before covering ; and if you desire to have a horse colt, the usual advice is, to have her covered when one of the masculine Signs governs, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, or *Leo* ; and under the other Signs you will have a mare foal. This is accounted so certain, that it seldom or never fails, especially if the wind be either west or north, though the west is the best for it.

As for the manner of covering, she must be brought out into some broad place, and tied to a post, then bring out some stone jade to dally with her, to provoke her to appetite ; after which let the stallion be led out by two men, and let him leap her in the morning fasting, and when he is dismounting, let a pail of cold water be thrown upon her shape, which by reason of the coldness, will make her shrink in and truss up her body, whereby she is caused to retain the seed the better ; then take away the stallion, and let the mare be put out of the hearing of the horse, and let her neither eat nor drink in four or five hours after, and then give her a mash and white water : You may know if she stands to her covering, by her keeping a good stomach, and her not neighing at the sight of a horse ; so likewise if she does not piss often, nor frequently open and shut her shape ; or that her belly four days after covering be more gaunt, the hair more sleek and close to her skin, and the like. Some there are who put the horse and mare together into an empty house, for three or four nights, and take the horse away in the

morning and feed him well, but the mare sparingly, and especially they give her but little water.

Now as for the ordering the mare after covering, let her be kept to the same diet as before, for three weeks or a month, lest the seed be impaired before it be formed in the womb; and let her be kept sweet and clean, without any exercise, during three weeks or a month; and in the house till *mid-day*, with her feet well pared, and with a thin pair of shoes on: Take her up again about the latter end of *September*, if not before, and keep her to the end of her foaling.

If she cannot foal, hold her nostrils so that she cannot take her wind; or if that will not do, take the quantity of a walnut of *madder*, dissolve it in a pint of ale, and give it warm to her; and in case she cannot void her *Secundine*, then boil two or three handfuls of *fennel* in running-water, and put half a pint thereof in as much sack, or for want thereof, a pint of strong beer or ale, with a fourth part of salad oil, mixed together, and give it her lukewarm in her nostrils, and hold them close for a good space; or for want thereof, give her good green wheat or rye, but the last is best, and they are as effectual; and let her not eat her clean, for that is very unwholesome, and will dry up her milk.

When she has foaled and licked her foal, milk and stroak her before the colt sucks, which will both cause her to bring down her milk and make it to multiply, and keep it so that it do not clod; and in case she becomes dry, if there be need, boil as much milk as you can get from her with the leaves of *lavender* and *spike*, and bathe the udder with it warm, till it be broken, and the knobs and knots dissolved: Her water now must be white water, which is bran put into water, and give her sweet mashes; and a month after foaling, let her have a mash with some *brimstone* and *savin* in it, which will be a great preservation to the colt, after which, if
she

ſhe be moderately laboured at plough or harrow, both ſhe and the colt will be the better, provided ſhe be kept from raw meats while ſhe remains in the ſtable, which will both increaſe her milk and cauſe her colt to thrive the better; and care muſt be taken not to ſuffer the colt to ſuck her when ſhe is hot, leſt thereby you ſurfeit the colt.

Some are of opinion, that the winter-ſeaſon is a very improper time for foaling, becauſe of the coldneſs of the weather, and ſcarcity of graſs, ſo that the mare muſt neceſſarily be houſed and fed with hard meat, which will dry up her milk, and ſtarve the foal: Yet experience teaches us, that notwithstanding all this, it is certainly the beſt time both for mare and foal too, being kept in a warm houſe; and as for her milk, ſhe will have plenty, if well fed, and that more nouriſhing than what is got at graſs, which will make him more luſty, of greater bone and ſtature, cleaner limbed, more neatly jointed and hoofed, and in much better liking, than the colt foaled in *May* or *June*, or any other of the hot months; whereas, beſides other inconveniences by the colt's running along with the mare, he becomes ſo ſavage and wild, that if any infirmity ſeizes him, his own unruleneſs being ſo great, the cure may be very difficult; for infinite are the numbers that have periſhed in this kind.

Now in caſe ſome time after the mare has taken horſe, you are uncertain whether ſhe be with foal or not, pour a ſpoonful of cold water or vinegar into her ear, and if ſhe only ſhakes her head, it is a ſign ſhe is with foal; but if ſhe ſhakes her head, body and all, it is a ſign ſhe is not; or if ſhe ſcours, her coat grows ſmooth and ſhining, and that ſhe grows fat, it is alſo a ſign ſhe holds.

In caſe you are deſirous no mare ſhould go barren, in the month of *July*, or the beginning of *Auguſt*, get a mare or two that have not been covered that year

before, and enforcing them to be horfed, when they fhall be ready to be covered, you muft turn them, with fome other which you efteem not as your beft horfe, among your ftud of mares, and fo he covering that mare or mares you turned in with him into the ftud, fhall caufe the reft of them, if any of them have not conceived at their firft coverings, to come to that horfe again; whereby you fhall be fure to keep no mare barren all the year, but have a colt of every mare, though not of your beft horfe. You may fuffer your horfe to run amongft your mares three weeks or a month; but if you turn him into your ftud, putting in no mare with him ready to be covered, he will at his firft entering beat all the mares, and perhaps hurt thofe that had conceived before, and fo do more hurt than good.

Some reckon the beft *recipe* to bring a mare in feafon and make her retain, is to give her to eat, for the fpace of eight days before you bring her to the horfe, about two quarts of hemp feed in the morning, and the fame at night; but if ſhe refuſes to eat it, mix with it a little bran or oats, or elſe let her faſt for a while; and if the ſtallion eats alſo of it, it will contribute much to generation.

It is a maxim, that a mare ſhould never be horfed while ſhe is bringing up her foal, becauſe the foal to which ſhe is giving ſuck, as well as that in her belly, will receive prejudice thereby, and the mare her ſelf will be alſo ſooner ſpent; but if you would have your mare covered, let it be ſeven or eight days after ſhe has foaled, that ſhe may have time to cleanſe; and if it may be conveniently done, do not give her the ſtallion till ſhe deſires him, and alſo increaſe, by all means poſſible, that paſſion, by ſtrong feeding, &c.

For the producing of *males*, the mare muſt be brought in ſeaſon, and covered very early in the morning, any time from the fourth day of the moon until it be
full

full, but never in the decrease; and thus she will not fail to bring forth a male colt.

Mares, besides the many distempers they are liable to in common with horses, and which will be found under their several names, have some others, peculiar to their kind only, of which I shall speak briefly, and their cure. If your mare be barren, boil good store of the herb *agnus* in the water she drinks; or stamp a good handful of leeks with four or five spoonfuls of wine, to which put some *cantharides*, and strain them all together, with a sufficient quantity of water to serve her two days together, by pouring the same into her nature, with a glister-pipe made for that purpose; and at three days end offer the horse to her, and if he covers her, wash her nature twice together with cold water; or take a little quantity of *nitrum*, sparrow's dung, and turpentine, wrought together, and made like a suppository, and putting that into her nature, it will do.

If you would have her fruitful, boil good store of *motherwort* in the water she drinks.

If she loses her belly, which shews a consumption of the womb, give her a quart of brine to drink, having *muwort* boiled therein.

If through good keeping she forsakes her food, give her for two or three days together, a ball of butter and *agnus castus* chopped together.

If she be subject to cast her foal, keep her at grass very warm, and once a week give her a good warm mash of drink, which secretly knits beyond expectation.

You are to observe, that mares go with foal eleven months and as many days as they are years old; as for instance, a mare of nine years old, will carry her foal eleven months and nine days; so that you may so order the covering of your mares, that their foals may be brought forth, if you will, at such time as there is abundance of grass. See *STALLION and COLT*.

Of STALLIONS.

A Stallion is an ungeld horse, designed for the covering of mares, in order to propagate the species ; and when his stones are taken away, and he is gelt, is called a gelding.

Now in the chusing stone-horses, or stallions for mares, you ought to take great care that they neither have moon-eyes, watery-eyes, blood-shotten-eyes, splents, spavins, curbs, nor, if possible, any natural imperfection of any kind whatsoever ; for if they have, the colts will take them hereditarily from their parents.

But let them be the best, ablest, highest spirited, fairest coloured, and finest shaped ; and a person should inform himself of all natural defects in them, of which none are free.

As for his age, he ought not to be younger, to cover a mare, than four years old, from which time forward he will beget colts till twenty.

Let the stallion be so high fed, as to be full of lust and vigour, and then brought to the place where the mares are ; take off his hinder shoes, and let him cover a mare in hand twice or thrice, to keep him sober ; then pull off his bridle, and turn him loose to the rest of the mares, which must be in a convenient close, with strong fences and good food, and there leave him till he has covered them all, so that they will take horse no more ; by which time his courage will be pretty well cooled.

Ten or twelve mares are enough for one horse in the same year ; it will also be necessary to have some little shed or hovel in the field, to which he may retreat to defend him from the rain, sun, and wind, which are very weakening to a horse : let there be likewise a rack and manger to feed him in, during his covering-time, and it would not be amiss if one were
to

to watch him during that time, for fear of any accident, and the better to know how often he covers each mare.

When he has done his duty, take him away from the mares, and remove them into some fresh pasture.

Take notice, that when you would have mares covered, either in hand or otherwise, that both the stallion and mare ought to have the same feeding, *viz.* if the horse be at hay and oats, which are commonly called hard meats, the mare should be also at hard meat, otherwise she will not be so fit to hold.

In the like manner, if the stallion be at grass, you must also put the mare to grass.

Those mares which are in middling case, conceive the most easily ; whereas those that are very fat, hold with great difficulty ; those of them that are hot and in season, retain a great deal better ; their heat exciting the stallion, who, on his part, performs the action with greater vigour and ardour.

And when you cover a mare in hand, in order that she may the more certainly hold, let the stallion and the mare be so placed in the stable, that they may see each other, keeping them so for some time, which will animate them both, and then they will hardly fail to generate.

For the ordering of a stallion, some give the following instructions.

Feed the stallion for three months at least, before he is to cover, with good oats, pease, or beans, or with coarse bread, and a little hay, but a good deal of wheat straw ; carrying him twice a day out to water, walking him up and down for an hour after he has drank, but without making him sweat.

If the stallion be not thus brought into wind before he covers, he will be in danger of becoming pursey, and broken winded ; and if he be not well fed, he will not be able to perform his task, or at best the colts
would

would be but pitiful and weak ones ; and though you should take great care to nourish him, yet you will take him in again very weak.

If you put him to many mares, he will not serve you so long, but his mane and tail will fall away by reason of poverty, and it will be a difficult matter to bring him to a good condition of body, against the year following.

He ought to have mares according to his strength, as twelve or fifteen, or at most not above twenty.

Of STABLES.

AS to the situation of a stable, it should be in a good air, and upon hard, firm, and dry ground, that in the winter the horse may come and go clean in and out ; and, if it may be, it will be best if it be situated upon an ascent, that the urine, foul water, or any wet, may be conveyed away by trenches or sinks cut out for that purpose.

By no means let there be any hen-roosts, hog-sties, or houses of easement, or any other filthy smells near it, for hen-dung or feathers swallowed, oftentimes proves mortal, and the ill air of a jakes sometimes causes blindness ; and the smell of swine is apt to breed the *farcin* ; and there is no animal that delights more in cleanliness, nor is more offended at unwholesome savours than a horse.

Brick is better for building stables than *stone*, the latter being subject to sweating in wet weather, and the dampness and moisture causes rheums and catarrhs.

Let the walls be of a good convenient thickness, at least a brick and half or two bricks thick, both for the sake of safety and warmth in winter, and to defend him from being annoy'd with the heat in summer, which would hinder his digesting his food.

It

It will be proper to have windows both on the east and on the north sides, that he may have the benefit of the north air in summer, and of the morning sun from the east in the winter.

Let the windows be glazed, and if they be fashed it will not only be the handsomer, but will be more convenient to let in air at pleasure : and let there be close wooden shutters, that you may darken the stable in the middle of the day, which will incline the horse to take his rest as well in the day as in the night.

That part of the floor on which the horse is to stand should be made of oaken planks, for they will be both easier and warmer for the horse to lie upon than stones ; and be sure to lay them level, for if they are laid higher before than behind, (as they generally are in Inns and Horse-courser's stables, that their horses may appear to more advantage in stature) his hinder legs will swell, and he can never lie easily, because his hinder parts will be still slipping down.

Lay the planks cross-ways, and not length-ways, and sink a good trench underneath them, which may receive the urine through holes bored in the planks, and convey it into some common receptacle.

Raise the ground behind him even with the planks, that he may continually stand upon a level ; and let the floor behind him be paved with small pebble ; and be sure to let that part of the stable where the rack stands be well wainscotted.

Place two rings at each side of his stall for his halter to run through, which should have a light wooden logger at the bottom of it, to poise it perpendicularly, but not so heavy as to tire the horse, or to hinder him from eating.

Some recommend a drawer or locker made in the wainscot partition, rather than a fixt manger, for him to eat his corn out of, which may be taken out to cleanse at pleasure.

This

This need not be made large, and therefore will not take up much room.

They also advise not to make any rack at all, but instead of it, (according to the *Italian* fashion) to give the horse his hay on the ground, upon the litter; or else you may, if you please, nail some boards in the form of a trough, in which you may put his hay, and the boards will prevent him from trampling on and spoiling it.

Some again disapprove of this way of feeding, thinking it may spoil his chest, and that his blowing upon his hay will make it nauseous to his palate: but others again answer, that as to the spoiling of his chest, it rather strengthens it and makes it firm; whereas on the contrary, the lifting of his head up high to the rack, will make him withy cragged. But the way before-mentioned he will feed as he lies, which will be for his ease. And as to the hay, that may be given him but by small quantities at a time; and there will be this advantage in receiving his hay on the ground, the prone posture will cleanse his head from rheum or pose, which he may happen by any ways to have gotten, and induce him to sneeze and throw out all manner of watery humours that may annoy his head.

If you have stable-room enough you may make partitions, and at the head, towards the manger, board them to that height that one horse may not molest or smell to another, allowing each horse room enough to turn about and lie down at pleasure.

One of the stalls may be made convenient for your groom to lie in, in case of a match, or the sickness of a horse.

Behind the horses may be made a range of presses, with pegs to hang up saddles, bridles, &c. and shelves for other utensils, pots of ointment, &c.

And in order that the stable may not be encumbered with oat bins, you may make use of the method of
a cer-

a certain Gentleman, described by Dr. *Plott* in his history of *Oxfordshire*, as follows.

Make a conveniency to let the oats down from above, out of a vessel like the hopper of a mill, whence they fall into a square pipe let into the wall, of about four inches diagonal, which comes down into a cupboard, also set into the wall, but with it's end so near the bottom, that there shall never be above a gallon or such a quantity in the cupboard at a time, which being taken away and given to the horses, another gallon presently succeeds, so that in the lower part of the stable where the horses stand there is not an inch of room taken up for the whole provision of oats; which hath also this further conveniency, that by this motion the oats are kept constantly sweet, the taking away of one gallon moving the whole mass above, which otherwise, being laid in great quantities, would be apt to grow musty.

There may also be two of these made, the one for oats and the other for split beans, and both let into the range of presses, the oats and beans being separated above by partitions.

Let the floor over the stable be cycled, whether you make it a granery, or a lodging-room for your groom, that no dust may fall from it upon your horses.

There are also other requisites, as a dung-yard, a pump, a conduit; and if some pond or running river were near, it were the better.

Of B O W L I N G.

TH E first and greatest cunning to be observed in bowling, is the right chusing your bowl, which must be suitable to the ground, you design to run on. Thus for close alleys your best choice is the flat bowl. 2. For open grounds of advantage, the round

round byassed bowl. 3. For green swards that are plain and level, the bowl that is as round as a ball.

The next thing that requires your care, is the chusing out your ground, and preventing the winding hangings, and many turning advantages of the same, whether it be in open wide places, as bares and bowling-greens, or in close bowling alleys.

Lastly, have your judgment about you, to observe and distinguish the risings, fallings, and advantages of the places where you bowl: have your wits about you, to avoid being rookt of your money; and have your understanding about you, to know your best time and opportunity for this recreation; and finally, a studious care of your words and passions; and then bowl away, and you may deserve, *well have you bowled indeed.*

Coursing with GREYHOUNDS.

IS a recreation in great esteem with many gentlemen. It affords greater pleasure than hunting in some respects. As, first, because it is sooner ended. Secondly, it does not require so much toil. Thirdly, the game for the most part always in sight. Fourthly in regard to the delicate qualities and shape of the greyhound.

There are three several courses with greyhounds, *viz.* at the deer, at the hare, and at the fox.

For the deer there are two sorts of courses, the one in the paddock, and the other either in the forest or purlieu.

For the paddock, there must be the greyhound, and the terrier, which is a kind of mongrel greyhound, whose business is to drive away the deer before the greyhounds are slipt, and most usually a brace or leash are let slip; seldom more than two braces.

Coursing

HARE-HUNTING.

THE best way in this, is to go and find out one sitting, which is easily done by walking cross the lands, either stubble, fallow or corn, and casting your eye up and down; for in the summer season they frequent such places for fear of ticks, which are common in woods; also the rain and the fall of the leaf offend them.

The rest of the year, you must beat up and down with poles to start them out of their forms and retreats, and some hares will not stir, until they are almost touched, and it is a certain sign that such hares will make an excellent course.

If a hare sit near any close or covert, and have her head towards the same with a fair field behind her, you may ride with as much company as you have between her and the covert before she put up, and then she is likely to make her course towards the champain, for she seldom takes the same way that her head is, when she sits in her form.

When a hare is first started, you give her ground or law, which commonly is twelvescore yards or more, according to the ground where she sits, or else you lose much of your sport by putting an end to it too soon; and it is very pleasant to see the turnings and windings, that the hare will make to save her self, which sometimes prove effectual to her.

Hare, is a beast of venery, or the forest, peculiarly so termed in the second year of her age.

There are four sorts of *hares*; some live in the mountains, some in the fields, some in marshes, some every where, without any certain place of abode. The *mountain hares* are the swiftest, the *field hares* are not so nimble, and those of the *marshes* are the slowest; but the wandering *hares* are most dangerous to follow, for they are so cunning in the ways and mazes of the fields,
running

running up the hills and rocks, because by custom they know a nearer way with other tricks, to the confusion of the dogs, and discouragement of the Hunters.

It will not be improper to give a description of the parts of a hare, since it is admirable to behold how every limb and member of this beast is composed for celerity.

In the first place the head is round, nimble, short, yet of convenient length, and apt to turn every way.

The ears are long and lofty, like those of an ass; for nature hath so provided, that every fearful and unarmed creature should have long and large ears, that by hearing it might prevent its enemies, and save itself by flight: the lips continually move, while they are asleep as well as awake; and from the slit they have in the middle of their nose comes the name of *bare-lips*, found in some men.

The neck of a hare is long, small, round, soft, and flexible; the shoulder-bone strait and broad, for her more easy turning; her legs before soft, and stand broader behind than before, and the hinder legs longer than the fore legs: the breast is not narrow, but fitted to take more breath than any other beast of that bigness: It has a nimble back and a fleshy belly, tender loins, hollow sides, fat buttocks filled up, and strong and nervous knees. Their eyes are brown, and they are subtil, but not bold; seldom looking forward, because they go by leaps: their eye-lids coming from their brows, are too short to cover their eyes, so that when they sleep they open them.

They have certain little bladders in their belly, filled with matter, out of which both sexes suck a certain humour and anoint their bodies all over with, by which they are defended against rain.

Tho' their sight is dim, yet they have an indefatigable faculty of seeing; so that the countenance of it,
tho'

tho' but in a mean degree, makes amends for the want of the excellency of it in them.

They feed abroad, because they would conceal their forms, and never drink, but content themselves with dew, which makes them frequently grow rotten.

As it is said before, every limb of a hare is composed for swiftness, and therefore she never walks or treads, but jumps; her ears lead her the way in the chace, for with one of them she hearkeneth to the cry of the dogs, and the other she stretches forth like a sail, to help forward her course; always stretching her hinder beyond her former, and yet not hindering them at all; and in paths and highways she runs more speedily.

The hares of the mountains often exercise themselves in the vallies and plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the nearest ways to their forms, or constant places of abode; so that when at any time they are hunted in the fields, such is their subtil dodging, that they will dally with the Huntsman till they seem to be almost taken, and then on a sudden take the nearest way to the mountains, and so take sanctuary in the inaccessible places, to which neither dogs nor horses can or dare ascend.

Hares which frequent bushes and brakes are not able to endure labour, nor are very swift, because of the pain in their feet, growing fat by means of idleness, and not using themselves to running.

The *field hare* being leaner of body, and oftner chased, is more difficultly taken, by reason of her singular agility; for when she begins her course, she bounds up from the ground as if she flew, afterwards passes through brambles, over thick bushes and hedges, with all expedition; and if she cometh into deep grass or corn, she easily delivers herself and slides through it, always holding up one ear, and bending it at pleasure, to be the moderator of her chace.

Neither

Neither is she improvident and prodigal of her strength, as to spend it all in one course, but she has regard to the force of her pursuer, who if he be slow and sluggish, she is not profuse of her strength, nor uses her utmost swiftness, but only advances gently before the dogs, yet safely from their clutches, reserving her greatest strength for the time of her greatest necessity, knowing she can out-run the dogs at her pleasure, and therefore will not strain herself more than she is urged.

But if she be pursued by a dog that is swifter than then she puts on with all the force she can, and having once left the hunters and dogs a great way behind her, she makes to some little hill, or rising ground, where she raises herself upon her hinder legs, that thereby she may observe how far off, or how near her pursuers are.

The younger hares, by reason of their weak limbs, tread heavier on the earth than the older, and therefore leave the greater scent behind them.

At a year old they run very swiftly, and their scent is stronger in the woods than in the plain fields; and if they lie down on the earth (as they love to do) in red fallow grounds, they are easily descried.

Their footsteps in winter are more apparent than in summer, because as the nights are longer, they travel farther; neither do they scent in winter mornings so soon as it is day, till the frost is a little thawed; but especially their footsteps are uncertain at the full of the moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering, or putting out their scent or favour; and in the spring-time also, when they do engender, they confound one another's footsteps by multitudes.

Hares and rabbits are mischievous to nurseries and newly planted orchards, by peeling off the bark of the plants; for the prevention of which some bind ropes
about

about the trees to a sufficient height ; some daub them with tar, which being of it self hurtful to young plants, the mischief is prevented by mixing with it any kind of greafe, and boiling it over a fire, so as both may incorporate ; then with a brush or little broom, daub over the stem of the tree as high as a rabbit or hare can reach ; do this in *November*, and it will secure the trees for that whole year, it being in the winter-time only in which they feed upon the bark.

Also some thin stuff out of a house of office, or the thick tempered with water, has been often applied with good success ; or the white wash made use of by Plaisterers for whitening houses, done once a year over the trees with a brush, will preserve them from hares, deer, and other animals.

As for such hares as are bred in warrens, the warreners have a crafty device to fatten them, which has been found by experience to be effectual ; and that is, by putting wax into their ears to make them deaf, and then turning them into the place where they are to feed, where, being freed from the fear of hounds, and for want of hearing, they grow fat before others of their kind.

It is generally believed, that a hare naturally knows the change of weather from one twenty-four hours to another.

When she goes to her form, she will suffer the dew to touch her as little as she can, but takes the high-ways and beaten paths : again when she rises out of her form, if she couches her ears and scut, and runs not very fast at first, it is an infallible sign that she is old and crafty.

They go to buck commonly in *January*, *February*, and *March*, and sometimes all the warm months ; sometimes seeking the buck at seven or eight miles distant from

from the place they usually sit at, following the high-ways, &c.

To distinguish a male hare from the female, you may know him as you hunt him to his form, by his beating the hard high-ways : he also feeds farther out in the plains, and makes his doublings and crossings much wider, and of greater compass, than the female doth ; whereas the female will keep close by some covert side, turning and winding in the bushes like a coney ; and if she go to relief in the corn fields, she seldom crosses over the furrow, but follows them along, staying upon the thickest tufts of corn to feed.

You may likewise know a buck at his rising out of his form, by his hinder parts, which are more upon the whitish, and his shoulders, before he rises, will be redder than the doe's, having some loose long hairs growing on them.

You may likewise know a buck at his rising out of his form, by his hinder parts, which are more upon the whitish, and his shoulders, before he rises, will be redder than the doe's, having some loose long hairs growing on them.

Again, his head is shorter and better trussed, his hairs about his lips longer, and his ears shorter and more grey : the hairs upon the female's chine are of a blackish grey.

And besides, when hounds hunt a female hare, she will use more crossing and doubling, seldom making out end-ways before the hounds ; whereas the male acts contrarily, for having once made a turn or two about his form, then farewell hounds, for he will frequently lead them five or six miles before ever he will turn his head.

When you see that your hounds have found where a hare hath passed to relief upon the high-way-side, and hath much-doubled and crossed upon dry places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the corn, it
is

is a sign she is but lately come thither ; and then commonly she will stay upon some high place to look about her, and to chuse out a place to form in, which she will be loth to part with.

The craft and subtilty of a HARE.

As of all chaces the *hare* makes the greatest pastime and pleasure, so it is a great delight and satisfaction to see the craft of this small animal for her self-preservation.

And the better to understand them, consider what weather it is : if it be rainy, then the hare will hold the high ways more than at any other time, and if she come to the side of any young grove or spring, she will scarcely enter, but squat down by the side of it till the hounds have over-shot her, and then she will return, the very same way she came, to the place from whence she was started, and will not go by the way into any covert, for fear of the wet and dew that hangs upon the boughs.

In this case the Huntsman ought to stay an hundred paces before he comes to the wood-side, by which means he will perceive whether she return as aforesaid, which if she do, he must halloo in his hounds, and call them back, and that presently, that the hounds may not think it the counter she came first.

The next thing that is to be observed, is the place where the hare sits, and upon what wind she makes her form, either upon the north or south wind ; she will not willingly run into the wind, but run up on a-side, or down the wind ; but if she form in the water, it is a sign she is foul and measles : if you hunt such a one, have a special regard all the day to the brook-sides, for there, and near plashees, she will make all her crossings, doublings, &c.

Some *hares* have been so crafty, that as soon as they have heard the sound of the horn, they would instantly
start

start out of their form, tho' it was the distance of a quarter of a mile, and go and swim in some pool, and rest upon some rush bed in the midst of it ; and would not stir from thence till they have heard the horn again, and then have started out again, swimming to land, and have stood up before the hounds four hours before they could kill them, swimming and using all subtilties and crossings in the water.

Nay, such is the natural craft and subtilty of a hare, that sometimes, after she has been hunted three hours, she will start a fresh hare, and squat in the same form.

Others having been hunted a considerable time, will creep under the door of a sheep-coat, and there hide themselves among the sheep, or when they have been hard hunted, will run in among a flock of sheep, and will by no means be gotten out from among them, till the hounds are coupled up and the sheep driven into their pens.

Some of them (and that seems somewhat strange) will take the ground like a coney, and that is called, *going to the vault*.

Some *hares* will go up one side of the hedge and come down the other, the thickness of the hedge being the only distance between the courses.

A *hare* that has been sorely hunted, has got upon a quick-set hedge, and ran a good way upon the top thereof, and then leap'd off upon the ground.

And they will frequently betake themselves to furz-bushes, and will leap from the one to the other, whereby the hounds are frequently in default.

Some affirm that a *hare*, after she has been hunted two hours and more, has at length, to save her self, got upon an old wall, six foot high from the ground, and hid her self in a hole that was made for scaffolding ; and that some *hares* have swam over the rivers *Trent* and *Severn*.

A hare

A *hare* is supposed not to live above seven years at the most, especially the bucks, and if a buck and a doe shall keep one quarter together, they will never suffer any strange *hare* to sit by them; and therefore it is said by way of proverb, *the more you hunt, the more hares you shall have*: because when you have killed one *hare*, another will come and possess his form.

A *hare* hath a greater scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the hounds, when she feeds and relieves upon green corn, than at any other time of the year; and yet there are some *hares* that naturally give a greater scent than others, as the large *wood-hares*; and such as are foul and meased keep near to the waters: but the small red *hare*, which is not much bigger than a *coney*, is neither of so strong a scent, nor so eagerly hunted.

Those *hares* that feed upon the small branches of wild thyme, or such like herbs, are generally very swift, and will stand long up before the hounds.

Again, there are some *hares* more subtil and cunning than others, young *hares* which have never been hunted are foolish, and are neither of force nor capacity to use such subtilties and crafts, but most commonly hold on end-ways before the hounds, and oftentimes squat and start again, which greatly encourages the hounds, and enters them better than if the *hare* should fly end-ways, as sometimes they will for five or six mile an end.

The females are more crafty and politic than the males, for they double and turn shorter than they, which is unpleasant to the hounds; for it is troublesome to them to turn so often, delighting more in an end-way chace, running with all their force: for those *hares* which double and cross so often, it is requisite at default, to cast the greater compass about, when you beat to make it out; for so you will find all her subtilties, and yet need not stick upon any of them, but
only

only where she went on forward : by this means you will abate her force, and compel her to need doubling and crossing.

How to enter Hounds to a HARE.

Let the Huntsman be sure in the first place to make them very well acquainted with himself and his voice, and let them understand the horn, which he should never blow but when there is good cause for it.

When you enter a young kennel of hounds, have a special regard to the country where you make the first quarry, for so they are like to succeed accordingly ; since their being entered first in a plain and champain country, will make them ever after delight more to hunt therein than elsewhere ; and it is the same with the coverts.

In order to have the best hounds, use them to all kinds of hunting, yet do not oblige them to hunt in the morning, by reason of the dew and moisture of the earth ; and besides, if they be afterwards hunted in the heat of the day, they will soon give over the chase. Neither will they call on willingly nor cheerfully, but seek out the shades to sleep in.

But yet many are of opinion, that to hunt both early and late in the morning, by trayling, profits the hounds as to the use of their noses ; and by keeping them sometimes in the heat of the day, or till night incites courage in them.

The best season to enter young hounds, is in *September* and *October*, for then the weather is temperate, and neither too hot nor too cold ; and this is the season to find young *hares* that have never been hunted, which are silly, and ignorant of the politic crossings, doublings, &c. of their fires, running commonly endways, frequently squatting, and as often starting ; by which encouragement the hounds are the better entered.

Some

Some *hares* hold the high-beaten ways only, where the hounds can have no scent; therefore when the Huntsman finds his hounds at a default in the highway, let him hunt on until he find where the *bare* hath broken from the highway, or hath found some dale or fresh place where the hounds may recover scent, looking narrowly on the ground as he goes, to see to find the footing or pricking of the *bare*.

There are other places wherein a hound can find no scent; and that is, in fat and rotten ground, which sticks to the feet of the *bare*; and this is called *carrying*, and so of consequence she leaves no scent behind her.

There are also certain months in the year in which a hound can find no scent, and that is in the spring-time, by reason of the fragrant scent of flowers, and the like.

But avoid hunting in hard frosty weather as much as you can, for that will be apt to surbate or founder your hounds, and cause them to lose their claws; besides, at that time a *bare* runs better than at other times, the soles of her feet being hairy.

In a word, the best way of entering your hounds, is with the assistance of old staunch hounds, so they will be better learned to cast for it at a doubling or default.

What time of the year is best for Hare hunting; how to find her, start her, and chase her.

The best time to begin *bare-hunting*, is about the middle of *September*, and to end towards the latter end of *February*, lest you destroy the early brood of leverets.

And besides, when the winter comes on, the moistness and coolness of the earth increases, which is agreeable to the nature of the hounds, and very acceptable. they not liking extremes either of hot or cold weather.

Those hounds that are two years old and upwards, may be exercised three times a week; and the hunting so often will do them good, provided they be well

E

fed;

fed ; and they may be kept the greatest part of the day, both to try their stoutness, and to make them stout.

If any hound shall have found the tryal of a *hare*, when she hath relieved that night, the Huntsman ought not to be too hasty, but let the hounds make it themselves ; and when he perceives that they begin to draw in together, and to call on freshly, then he ought to encourage them, especially that hound which hunteth best, frequently calling him by his name.

Here you may take notice, that a *hare* leaveth better scent when she goes to relief than when she goeth towards her form ; for when she relieves in the field, she coucheth her body low upon the ground, passing often over one piece of ground, to find where the best food lies, and thus leaveth the best scent, crossing also sometimes : besides, when she goes to her form, she commonly takes the highways, doubling, crossing, and leaping as lightly as she can ; in which places the hounds can have no scent by reason of the dust, &c. and yet they will squat by the sides of highways, and therefore let the huntsman beat very well the sides of those highways.

Now having found where a hare hath relieved in some pasture or corn-field, you must then consider the season of the year, and what weather it is ; for if it be in the spring-time or summer, a hare will not then set in bushes, because they are frequently infested with pismires, snakes, and adders ; but will set in corn-fields and open places.

In the winter-time, they set near towns and villages, in tufts of thorns and brambles, especially when the wind is northerly or southerly.

According to the season and nature of the place where the hare is accustomed to sit, there beat with your hounds, and start her ; which is much better sport than trayling of her from her relief to her form.

After

After the hare has been started, and is on foot, then step in where you saw her pass, and halloo in your hounds, until they have all undertaken it, and go on with it in full cry; then recheat to them with your horn, following fair and softly at first, making not too much noise either with horn or voice; for at the first, hounds are apt to overshoot the chase thro' too much heat.

But when they have run the space of an hour, and you see the hounds are well in with it, and stick well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the hounds, because by that time their heat will be cooled, and they will hunt more soberly.

But, above all things, mark the first doubling, which must be your direction for the whole day; for all the doublings that she shall make afterwards will be like the former, and according to the policies that you shall see her use, and the place where you hunt, you must make your compasses great or little, long or short, to help the defaults, always seeking the moistest and most commodious places for the hounds to scent in.

To conclude; those who delight in hunting the hare, must rise early, lest they be deprived of the scent of her foot-steps, by which means the dogs will be incapacitated to follow their game; for the nature of the scent is such that it will not remain long, but suddenly in a manner every hour vanisheth away.

The laws observed in coursing the HARE.

The following were established by the Duke of *Norfolk*, in the reign of *Queen Elizabeth*, and were subscribed unto by the chief gentry, and thence held authentic.

1. That he that is chosen Fewterer, or that lets loose the greyhounds, shall receive the greyhounds matched to run together into his leash as soon as he comes into the field, and follow next to the hare-finder,

or he who is to start the hare until he come unto the form, and no horseman or footman is to go before, or on any side but directly behind, for the space of about forty yards.

2. You ought not to course a hare with more than a brace of greyhounds.

3. The hare-finder ought to give the hare three so-hoes before he put her from her form or seat, to the end the dogs may gaze about, and attend her starting.

4. They ought to have twelvescore yards law before the dogs are loosed, unless there be danger of losing her.

5. That dog that gives the first turn, if after that there be neither cote, slip, or wrench, he wins the wager.

6. If one dog gives the first turn, and the other bears the hare, he that bears the hare shall win the wager.

7. A go by, or bearing the hare, is accounted equivalent to two turns.

8. If neither dog turn the hare, he that leads last to the covert wins.

9. If one dog turns the hare, serves himself and turns her again, it is much as a cote, and a cote is esteemed two turns.

10. If all the course be equal, he that bears the hare shall win; and if he be not born, the course shall be adjudged dead.

11. If a dog take fall in a course, and yet perform his part, he may challenge the advantage of a turn more than he gave.

12. If a dog turn the hare, serve himself, and give divers cotes, and yet in the end stand still in the field, the other dog, if he turns home to the coverts, altho' he gives no turn, shall be adjudged to win the wager.

13. If by misfortune, a dog be rid over in his course, the course is void, and to say the truth, he that did the mischief ought to make reparation for the damage.

14. If

14. If a dog give the first and last turn, and there be no other advantage betwixt them, he that gives the odd turn shall win.

15. A cote is when the greyhound goeth end-ways by his fellow, and gives the hare a turn.

16. A cote serves for two turns, and two trippings or jerkins for a cote; and if she turneth not quite about she only wrencheth.

17. If there be no cotes given between a brace of greyhounds but that one of them serves the other at turning: then he that gives the hare most turns wins the wager: and if one gives as many turns as the other, then he that beareth the hare wins the wager.

18. Sometimes the hare doth not turn, but wrench; for she is not properly said to turn, except she turn as it were round, and two wrenches stand for a turn.

19. He that comes in first to the death of the hare, takes her up, and saves her from breaking, cherisheth the dogs, and cleanses their mouths from the wool, is adjudged to have the hare for his pains.

20. Those that are judges of the leash, must give their judgment presently before they depart out of the field.

Courseing the FOX.

IN courseing a fox, no other art is required than standing close, and on a clear wind on the outside of some grove, where you are to expect his coming out, and then give him head enough, otherwise he will turn back to the covert: for the slowest greyhound will be swift enough to overtake him; and all the hazard of this course, is the spoiling your dog by the fox, which oftentimes happens; and for this reason, you should not run any that are worth much at this chase; but

but such that are hard bitten dogs that will seize any thing.

FOX HUNTING.

The shape and proportion of this beast is so well known, being so common that it is needless to describe him.

His nature is in many respects like that of a wolf, for they bring as many cubs at a litter the one as the other; but in this they differ, the fox littering deep under the ground, but the wolf doth not.

A bitch fox is very difficult to be taken when she is bragged and with cub, for then she will lie near her burrow, into which she runs, upon hearing the least noise: and indeed at any time it is somewhat difficult, for the fox (and so the wolf) is a very subtil crafty creature.

Fox hunting is a very pleasant exercise, for by reason of his strong, hot scent, he makes an excellent cry: and as his scent is hottest at hand, so it dies the soonest.

And besides he never flies far before the hounds trusting not to his legs, strength, or champain grounds; but strongest coverts. When he can no longer stand before the ground, he then taketh earth, and must be dug out.

If greyhounds course him on a plain, his last refuge is to piss on his tail, and flap it in their faces as they come near him; and sometimes squirting his thicker excrements upon them, to make them give over the course or pursuit.

When a bitch fox goes a clicketting and seeking for a dog, she cries with a hollow voice, not unlike the howling of a mad dog, and in the same manner she cries, when she misses any of her cubs; but never makes any cry at all when she is killing, but defends herself to the last gasp.

A fox will prey upon any thing he can overcome,
and

and will feed upon any sort of carrion: but their dainties, and the food they most delight in, is poultry.

They are very injurious and destructive to coney warrens and will sometimes kill hares by deceit and subtilty; but not by swift running.

The fox is taken with hounds greyhounds, terriers, nets, and gins.

For HUNTING above ground.

To hunt a fox with hounds you must draw about groves thickets, and bushes, near villages: for in such places he lurks to prey upon poultry, &c; but if you can find one it will be necessary to stop up his earth, the night before you intend to hunt and that about midnight, for then he goes out to prey; and this must be done by laying two white sticks across in his way, which will make him imagine it to be some gin or trap laid for him, or else they may be stopped up close with black thorns and earth together.

The best hunting a fox above ground, is in *January, February and March*, for then you shall best see your hounds hunting, and best find his earthing; and besides at those times the fox's skin is best in season.

Again the hounds hunt the fox best in the coldest weather, because he leaveth a very strong scent behind him; yet in cold weather it chills fastest.

At first only cast off your surefinders, and as the drag mends, so add more as you dare trust them, avoid casting off too many hounds at once; because woods and coverts are full of sundry chaces, and so you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let such as you cast off at first, be old staunch hounds which are sure, and if you hear such a hound call on merrily, you may cast off some others to him, and when they run it on the full cry, cast off the rest, and thus you shall compleat your pastime.

The words of comfort are the same which are used

in other chaces, attended with the same hallooings, and other ceremonies.

The hounds should be left to kill the fox themselves, and to worry and tear him as much as they please: some hounds will eat him with eagerness.

When he is dead hang him at the end of a pikestaff, and halloo in all your hounds to bay him; but reward them not with any thing belonging to the fox: for it is not good, neither will the hounds in common eat it.

Of HUNTING a FOX under ground.

If in case a fox does so far escape as to earth, countrymen must be got together with shovels, spades, mattocks, pickaxes, &c. to dig him out, if they think the earth not too great.

They make their earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in clay, stony ground, or amongst the roots of trees; and their earths have commonly but one hole; and that is straight a long way in before you come at their couch.

Sometimes craftily they take possession of a badger's old borrow, which hath a variety of chambers, holes, and angles.

Now to facilitate this way of hunting the fox: the huntsman must be provided with one or two terriers to put into the earth after him, that is to fix him into an angle: for the earth often consists of many angles: the use of the terrier is to know where he lies, for as soon as he finds him he continues baying or barking, so that which way the noise is heard that way dig to him.

But to know the manner of entering and farther use of these sorts of dogs.

However I shall here add, that in the first place you must have such as are able to dig, so your terriers must be garnished with bells hung in collars, to make the fox
bolt

bolt the sooner ; besides the collars will be some small defence to the terriers.

The instruments to dig withal are these ; a sharp pointed spade, which serves to begin the trench, where the ground is hardest, and broader tools will not so well enter ; the round hollowed spade, which is useful to dig among roots, having very sharp edges ; the broad flat spade to dig withal, when the trench has been pretty well opened, and the ground softer ; mattocks and pickaxes to dig in hard ground, where a spade will do but little service ; the coal rake to cleanse the hole, and to keep it from stopping up ; clamps, wherewith you may take either fox or badger out alive to make sport with afterwards.

And it would be very convenient to have a pail of water to refresh your terriers with, after they are come out of the earth to take breath.

After this manner you may besiege a fox, &c. in their strongest holes and castles, and may break their casemates, platforms, parapets, and work to them with mines and countermines till you have obtained what you desired.

Of Dogs.

A DOG is a domestic animal, made use of for the guard of a house, and for hunting : the dog is the symbol of fidelity, and amongst all irrational animals, may deservedly claim a most particular preference, both for their love and services to mankind ; using humilitations and prostrations, as the only means to pacify their angry masters who beat them, and turn revenge, after beating, into a more fervent love.

As there is no country in the world where there is not plenty of dogs, so no animals can boast of a greater variety, both in kind and shape ; some being for buck, others for bear, bull, boar, and some for the hare,

coney, and hedge-hog, while others are for other uses, according to their various natures, properties and kinds; neither are the uses and kinds of them so general, but their bringing up is also as easy, there being no great regard to be had as to their food, for they will eat any thing but the flesh of their own species, which cannot be so dressed by the art of man, but they will find it out by their smelling, and so avoid it.

Now because some Authors seem to lay a stress upon the colour of dogs, we shall briefly insert what they say, and begin with the white coloured dogs; which for the most part are not good to run after all sorts of beasts; but are excellent for the stag, especially if they be all over white, that is, pupped without any spot upon them: and experience has taught people to put a value upon such dogs, by reason of the natural instinct they have to perform every thing well they are designed for; being curious hunters, having admirable noses, and very good at stratagems: in short, these dogs are valued because they are naturally less subject to diseases than others, by reason of the predominancy of flegm in them, which gives them a good temperament of body.

A black hound is not to be despised, especially if marked with white, and not red spots; seeing this whiteness proceeds from a flegmatic constitution, which hinders him from forgetting the lesson he is taught, and makes him obedient; whereas dogs that have red spots are for the most part very fiery, and hard to be managed, by reason of the bilious humour that prevails, and causes this irregularity within them: and therefore a black dog with white spots is valuable, being usually hardy enough, will hunt well, is strong and swift, and holds out a long time: he will not forsake the chace, and when you are beating the water for sport, he will not be frightened at it: and lastly, he is the more esteemed, because those distempers incident to dogs, seldom befall him.

There

There are some grey coloured dogs that are good, and others you ought not to meddle with ; that is, mongrels, which come from a hound bitch that has been lined by a dog of another kind, or from a bitch of another kind, that has been lined by a hound : hounds cannot be good if they do not entirely retain the nature that is peculiar to them ; and when they do, grey dogs are to be coveted, because they are cunning, never fault, and grow not discouraged in the quest. 'Tis true, their sense of smelling is not so exquisite as that of those before mentioned, but they have other qualities which make amends for it ; for they are indefatigable in hunting, being of a robuster nature than others, and heat and cold, which they fear not, is alike to them.

Yellow dogs, are those which have red hairs, inclining to brown ; and as choler is the most predominant humour in this animal, so he is found to be of a giddy nature, and impatient, when the beast he follows makes turns, seeing he still runs forwards to find him, which is a great fault ; and therefore they are seldom made use of to hunt any other than the wolf, or such black beasts as are rarely inclined to turnings : they are too swift, open but very little, especially in very hot weather ; they are naturally impatient, and therefore hard to be taught, as they are uneasy under correction.

They are more subject to diseases than other dogs, by reason of that over fierceness of temper, which makes them hunt beyond their strength.

As to the proportions, sizes, and features of dogs, *M. Liger* says, the large, tall, and big hounds, called and known by the name of the deep-mouthed, or *southern-hound*, are heavy and slow, and fit for woodlands, and hilly countries ; they are of deep mouths, and swift spenders : they are generally lighter behind than before, with thick short legs, and are generally great of body and head, and are most proper for such

as

as delight to follow them on foot, as *stop-hunting*, a some call it; but by most is termed *hunting under the pole*; that is, they are brought to that exactness of command, that in the hottest scent, and fullest chace, if one but step before them, or hollow, or but hold up or throw before them the hunting-pole, they will stop in an instant, and hunt in full cry after you, at your own pace, until you give them encouragement by word of command; which much adds to the length of the sport, and pleasure of the hunters, so that a course oftentimes lasteth five or six hours.

Opposite to the deep-mouthed or southern hound, are the long and slender hounds, called the *fleet*, or *northern-hound*; which are very swift, as not being of so heavy a body, nor having such large ears: These will exercise your horses, and try their strength; they are proper for open, level, and champaign countries, where they may run in view, and full speed; for they hunt more by the eye than by the nose, and will run down a hare in an hour, and sometimes sooner: but the fox will exercise them longer, and better.

Between these two extremes, there are a middle sort of dogs, which partake of both their qualities as to strength and swiftness, in a reasonable proportion: they are generally bred by crossing the strains, and are excellent in such countries as are mixed, *viz.* some mountains, some inclosures, some plains, and some woodlands; for they will go through thick and thin, neither need they be helped over hedges, as the huntmen are often forced to do by others.

A true, right shaped, deep-mouthed hound, should have a round, thick head, wide nostrils, open and rising upwards, his ears large and thin, hanging lower than his chops, the fleeces of his upper lip should be longer than those of his nether chops, the chine of his back great and thick, strait and long, and rather bending out than inclining in; his thighs well trussed, his
haunches

haunches large, his fillets round and large, his tail or stern strong set on, waxing taper-wise towards the top, his hair under his belly rough and long, his legs large and lean, his feet dry and hard, with strong claws and high knuckles : in the whole, he ought to be of so just a symmetry, that when he stands level, you may discern which is highest, his fore or hinder parts.

For the *northern*, or *fleet-hound*, his head and nose ought to be slender and longer, his back broad, his belly gaunt, his joints long, and his ears thicker and shorter ; in a word, he is in all parts slighter made, and framed after the mould of a greyhound.

By crossing those breeds, as before observed, you may bring your kennel to such a composition as you think fit, every man's fancy being to be preferred ; and it is a well known saying,

So many men, so many minds ;

So many hounds, so many kinds.

Though I shall refer the reader to the diseases incident to dogs, under their respective heads ; yet their being bitten or stung by some venomous creatures, and others being not easily reducible to an article by it self, it shall be added here : and when they are stung by some adder, or other insect of that nature, you must take an handful of the herb cross-wort, gentian, and as much rue, the same quantity of *Spanish* pepper, thin broth, ends of broom and mint, of all an equal quantity ; when that is done, take some white wine, and make a decoction of the whole, letting it boil for an hour in a pot ; then strain the whole, into which put an ounce of dissolved treacle, and let the dog swallow it, and observe to wash the bite therewith : if a dog is bitten by a fox, anoint it with oil wherein you have boiled some rue and worms.

Of

Of DOG-MADNESS.

Dog-Madness is a distemper very common among all sorts of dogs ; easy to be prevented, but hard to be cured : there are no less than seven sorts of madness, amongst which some are esteemed incurable ; but before we proceed to particulars, it will be necessary to premise how it comes, and what are it's first symptoms.

The first cause proceeds from high feeding, want of exercise, fulness of blood and costiveness ; as for the two first, you must observe when you hunt them, that they should be better fed than when they rest, and let them neither be too fat nor too lean, but of the two, rather fat than lean, by which means they will not only be preserved from madness, but also mange and scab ; which diseases they will be subject to for want of air, water, or exercise ; but if you have but the knack to keep them thus in an even temper, they may live long and continue sound ; as for water they should be their own carvers : then for exercise and diet, it must be ordered according to discretion, observing a medium ; and for the latter, give them once a week, especially in the heat of the year, five or six spoonfuls of fallad oil, which will cleanse them : if at other times they have the quantity given them of a hazle-nut of mithridate, it is an excellent thing to prevent diseases, and it is very good to bleed them under the tongue, and behind the ears. But if madness has seized them before you perceive it, they must speedily be removed from the rest, for fear of an infection, and go to work with the rest.

The symptoms of this disease are many and easily discerned ; when any dog separates himself contrary to his former use, becomes melancholy or droops his head, forbears eating, and as he runs snatches at every thing ; if he often looks upwards, and that his stern at his setting on be a little erect, and the rest hanging down ;

down ; if his eyes be red, his breath strong, his voice hoarse, and that he drivels and foams at the mouth ; you may be assured he has this distemper.

The seven sorts of madness are as follows ; of which the two first are incurable, *viz.* the *hot burning madness*, and *running madness* ; they are both very dangerous ; for all things they bite and draw blood from, will have the same distemper ; they generally seize on all they meet with, but chiefly on dogs : their pain is so great it soon kills them. The five curable madnesses are ;

Sleeping madness, so called from the dog's great drowsiness, and almost continual sleeping ; and this is caused by the little worms that breed in the mouth of the stomach, from corrupt humours, vapours, and fumes which ascend to the head : for cure of which, take six ounces of the juice of wormwood, two ounces of the powder of hartshorn burnt, and two drams of agaric, mix all these together in a little white wine, and give it the dog to drink in a drenching horn.

Dumb madness lies also in the blood, and causes the dog not to feed, but to hold his mouth always wide open, frequently putting his feet to his mouth, as if he had a bone in his throat : to cure this, take the juice of black hellebore, the juice of *spatula putrida*, and of rue ; of each four ounces ; strain them well, and put thereto two drams of unprepared scammony, and being mixed well together, put it down the dog's throat with a drenching horn, keeping his head up for some time, lest he cast it out again ; then bleed him in the mouth, by cutting two or three veins in his gums.

It is said that about eight drams of the juice of an herb called hartshorn, or dog's tooth, being given to the dog, cures all sorts of madness, but whether it will or not is left to trial.

Lank madness is so called, by reason of the dog's leanness and pining away : for cure give them a purge
as

as before directed, and also bleed them : but some say there is no cure for it.

Rheumatic or flavering madness, occasions the dog's head to swell, his eyes to look yellow, and he will be always flavering and drivelling at the mouth ; to cure which, take four ounces of the powder of the roots of polipody of the oak, six ounces of the juice of fennel roots, with the like quantity of the roots of misleto, and four ounces of the juice of ivy : boil all these together in white wine, and give it to the dog as hot as he can take it, in a drenching horn.

Falling madness is so termed because it lies in the dog's head, and makes them reel as they go, and to fall down : for cure, take four ounces of the juice of briony, and the same quantity of the juice of peony, with four drams of stavesacre pulverized ; mix these together and give it the dog in a drenching horn ; also let him bleed in the ears, and in the two veins that come down his shoulders ; and indeed bleeding is necessary for all sorts of madness in dogs.

To prevent dogs from being mad, that are bitten by mad dogs, that is done by bathing them ; in order to which take a barrel or bucking tub full of water, into which put about a bushel and an half of foot, which must be stirred well, that it may be dissolved ; then put in the dog that is bitten, and plunge him over head and ears seven or eight times therein, and it will prevent his being mad ; but he should be also blooded.

When dogs happen to be bit as aforesaid, there is nothing better than their licking the place with their own tongues, if they can reach it, if not, then let it be washed with butter and vinegar made lukewarm, and let it afterwards be anointed with *Venice* turpentine : it is also good to piss often upon the wound ; but above all, take the juice of the stalks of strong tobacco boiled in water, and bathe the place therewith, also wash him in sea water, or water artificially made salt :
give

give him likewise a little mithridate inwardly in two or three spoonfuls of sack, and so keep him apart, and if you find him after some time still to droop, the best way is to hang him.

It may not be amiss to add what a late author advises every one who keeps a dog, which is to have him wormed, and is a thing of little trouble and charge, and what he believes would prevent their being mad; and if they are, he is of opinion that it prevents their biting any other creature; for he asserts he had three dogs bit by mad dogs, at three several times, that were wormed, and though they died mad, yet they did not bite, nor do any mischief to any thing he had: and having a mind to make a full experiment of it, he shut one of them up in a kennel, and put to him a dog he did not value: that the mad dog would often run at the other dog to bite him; but he found his tongue so much swelled in his mouth, that he could not make his teeth meet; that that dog, though he kept him with the mad dog till he died, yet did not ail any thing, though he kept him two years afterwards, and gave him no remedies to prevent any harm, which might come from the biting of the mad dog.

But as there are several sorts of madness in dogs, he was not certain whether the effects were the same in all; but his dogs seemed to die of the black madness, which is reckoned the most dangerous, and therefore he could not tell how far the following receipt might be effectual in all sorts of madness, though it had not failed in curing all the dogs that he gave it to which were bitten, and all those he gave it not to, died.

The remedy is this, take white hellebore and grate it with a grater to powder, which must be mixed with butter, and given to the dog: the dose must be proportioned to the size of the dog, to a very small lap-dog you may give three grains, to a large mastiff sixteen grains, and so in proportion to other sizes. He adds, that

that the best way is, to give him a small quantity at first, that it may be increased as it is found to work, or not to work ; but that as it is a strong vomit, and will make the dogs sick for a little time, so they must be kept warm that day it is given them, and the next night, and they must not have cold water ; but when it has done working, towards the afternoon give them some warm broth, and the next morning give them the same before you let them out of the house or kennel.

The same author says this is an extraordinary remedy for the mange ; that he never knew three doses fail of curing any dog that had it, except he had a surfeit with it ; which if he had, let him bleed also, and anoint him two or three times over with gunpowder and soap, beat up together, and it will cure him.

That he had it of a gentleman, who had cured several creatures that had been bit by mad dogs, with only giving them the middle yellow bark of buckthorn, which must be boiled in ale for a horse or cow, and in milk for a dog ; and that being bit with one himself, he adventured to take nothing else ; but that it must be boiled till it is as bitter as you can well take it.

The choice of a DOG and BITCH for breeding good
WHELPS.

The bitch ought to be one of a good kind, being strong and well proportioned in all parts, having her ribs and flanks great and large.

Let the dog that lines her be of a good fair breed ; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot hounds ; for if the dog be old, the whelps will participate of his dull and heavy nature.

If your bitch do not grow proud of her own accord, so soon as you would have her, you may make her so by giving her the following broth :

Boil two heads of garlic, half a castor's stone, the juice of cresses, and about twelve *Spanish* flies, in a pipkin.

kin that holds a pint, together with some mutton, and make broth of it; and give of this to the bitch two or three times, and she will not fail to grow proud, and the same pottage given to the dog will make him inclinable to copulation.

After your bitch has been lined and is with puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her cast her whelps; but let her walk up and down unconfined in the house and court; never locking her up in her kennel; for she is then impatient of food, and therefore you must make her some hot broth once a day.

If you would spay your bitch, it must be done before she has ever had a litter of whelps; and in spaying her take not away all the roots and strings of the veins; for if you do it will much prejudice her reins, and hinder her swiftness ever after: but by leaving some behind, it will make her much the stronger and more hardy.

But by no means do not spay her while she is proud, for that will endanger her life: but you may do it fifteen days after; but the best time of all is when the whelps are shaped within her

Of the WATER Spaniel; how to train, and order him for the game in fowling.

The water dog is of such general use, and so common amongst us, that there needs no great description of him; but there are great differences amongst them, as well in proportion as otherwise.

As to colour, the curious will make a difference, as the black to be the best and hardiest; the spotted or pied, quickest of scent, and the liver-hewed quickest in swimming; but, in truth, colour is nothing material, for without doubt there are good and bad of all colours, and that by experience is found: but his breeding, training up, and coming of a good kind, are the chief things; yet it must be confessed, that as to handsome-
ness,

ness, the colour is to be regarded, so is the proportion as to the shape; and then his head should be round, with curled hair, his ears broad and hanging, his eyes full and lively, his nose short, his lips like unto an hound's, his neck thick and short, his shoulders broad, his legs straight, his chine square, his ribs with a compass, his buttocks round, his thighs brawny, his belly gaunt, his pasterns strong and dew-clawed, and his fore-feet long and round, with his hair in general long and curled, not loose and shagged: for the first sheweth hardiness and strength to endure the water, and the other much tenderness and weakness.

Now for the training and bringing him up, you can't begin too early, to teach him obedience, when he can but lap, for that is the principal thing to be learned; for being made to obey, he is then ready to do your commands, therefore so soon as he can lap, teach him to couch and lie close, not daring to stir from that posture without your commands; and the better to effect this, always cherish him when he does your will, and correct him when he disobeys; and be sure to observe, that in the first teaching him you never let him eat any thing, but when he does something to deserve it, that he may thereby know, that food is a thing that cometh not by chance, or by a liberal hand, but only for a reward for well-doing; and this will make him not only willing to learn, but apt to remember what he is taught without blows, and to that end, have no more teachers than one, for variety breed confusion, as teaching divers ways, so that he can learn no way well.

Another thing is, you must be very constant to the words of direction by which you teach him, chusing such as are most pertinent to that purpose, and those words that you first use, do not alter, for dogs take notice of the sound, not of the *English*, so that the least alteration puts them to a stand: For example, if you
teach

teach him to couch at the word *down*, this will be a known command unto him; and I am of opinion, that to use more words than what is necessary, for one and the same thing, is to overload his memory, and cause forgetfulness in him.

And this method should be observed, as to the setting-dog.

You must teach him also to know the word of correction, and reprehension, for no lesson can be taught without a fault; and no fault should escape without reprehension, or at the least of chiding, and in this be as constant to a word; as, *Go too firrah, rascal*, or the like; which at first should be used with a lash or jerk, to make him know, that it is a word of wrath or anger; neither must such words proceed from you lovingly, or gently, but with passion and roughness of voice, together with fierceness of looks, that the whelp may tremble when he hears you speak thus. You must have certain words of cherishing when he hath done well, that he may be thereby encouraged, as *That's a good boy, well done*, or the like, using therewith cheerfulness of speech, without actions of favour, as spitting in his mouth, clapping him on the back, and the like; you must also use some words of advice, that when he is at his sport, he may the better perform the same, and they may serve to spur or put him forward with more cheerfulness of spirit, as *Take heed, hem*, or the like.

When your whelp is brought to understand these several words, *viz.* of instruction, correction, cherishing, and advice, and that he will couch and lie down at your feet, how, when, and as long as you please, and that with a word, or look only; then teach him to lead you in a line or collar, and to follow at your heels, without coming too close or hanging back; the meaning of this is, to teach him to be more familiar and obedient unto you.

Having brought him to perfect obedience, to follow
you

you in a line, the next thing must be, to make him follow you in like manner loose, without a line, and always to be at your heels, and to lie down by you without your leave to the contrary: this is as necessary a lesson as can be taught him, for he must be so but upon special occasion, as to raise up fowl from their haunts, and find out, and bring what you have shot or killed, unto you.

The next lesson to learn him is, to fetch and carry any thing that you shall command him; and this you may begin to teach him by the way of sport, as by taking your glove, and shaking over his head, making him to catch at it, and to play with it; and sometimes let him hold it in his mouth, and strive to pull it from you; then cast it a little way from you, and let him muzzle it on the ground; then take it from him gently, giving him cherishing, as, That's a good boy, well done, or the like.

After you have spent some time in this, and that you find him to take it from the ground, and to hold it in his mouth, as it were, from you; then begin to cast it further and further, giving him your command, saying, Fetch, or bring it, firrah; and if he brings it, then cherish and reward him with meat, or a crust of bread, and let him have no food, but what he deserves by doing his lesson; and by your continual practice he will fetch your glove, or any thing else you throw out for him.

If at any time he offers to run away with your glove, or to toss it up and down wantonly, not bringing it to your orderly, then first give him your word of instruction.

And if that will not do, your word of correction; and if neither avail, then proceed to blows, and give him nothing to eat as a reward, until he doth as you command.

When by this means you have made him perfect,
and

and that he will fetch a glove readily where-ever you throw it, bringing it to you, altho' in company, and all call him to come to them ; you must then make much of him, and reward him very well : and having trained him to fetch your glove, then proceed to teach him to fetch whatsoever you throw from you, as staves, sticks, stones, money, or any thing that is portable.

As also teach him to carry live or dead fowl, and with a tender mouth, that when you have occasion to use him for the sport, he may bring them to you without tearing, or so much as bruising a feather.

As you walk with him in the fields, drop something behind you unknown to him ; and being gone a little way, send him back to seek it, by saying, Back, firrah, I have lost ; and if at first he stand amazed, urge him still, and cease not by pointing to him the way you would have him go, until by seeking out he finds that which you so dropped ; which make him take up, by saying, That's it, and to bring it after you ; then drop it again, going twice as far as formerly, causing him to go back to seek it, not leaving him till you have made him find it, and bring it to you, for which cherish and reward him ; and where he fails there, chastise or chide him, sometimes with angry words, other times with blows, and sometimes keep him fasting, according to his offence ; and thus do until he will hunt the way back which you went, were it above a mile.

But if your dog happen to bring you a wrong thing, you must receive it from him, and cherish him ; but send him back presently again, saying, Away again, or, I have lost more, and be not satisfied until he hath brought you the right thing ; and if he return without any thing, then be sure both to chide and beat him for his sloth and negligence.

When he will thus fetch, carry, and find out things thus lost, then train him to hunting, beginning first
with

with tame fowl, which by your help (when they dive, or otherwise) you may with little labour make him take, which will hearten and encourage him to the sport.

After this, make him use all his cunning without your assistance, whether he gets or loses the game, and according to his desert, reward or correct him : by this practice he will become master of his game ; and be sure always that he bring his game (when taking) to the shore unto you without hurting it.

Your next business shall be, to train him unto your fowling-piece, causing him to follow, as it were, step by step behind you, and under the covert of your shadow until you have shot, or else couch, or lie close, where you appoint him, by saying, *lie close*, until you have shot ; and then upon the least notice, or beckoning speedily to come and do what you command.

Some dogs are so expert, as to have their eye upon the game, and upon a guns going off immediately, run to fetch it ; but 'tis adjudged not so good, for the place should not be a warning to him, but your command ; and if you give him his liberty at your shooting, when you come amongst your nets or lime-twigs, as soon as he seeth the fowl entangled and flutter their wings, he will presently rush in amongst them, and will occasion the spoiling your lime rods, and the tearing or entangling your nets.

The spaniel is of great use in the moulting-time, that is, when the wild-fowl cast their feathers, and can't fly, but lie lurking about in secret places ; which season is between summer and autumn : at which time take your dog into such places where they resort, causing him to hunt about ; and when he finds them, they are easily taken, because they can't fly.

In fenny countries, where fowl do much resort, great quantities may be so taken, driving them into places
where

where you must have nets ready fixed, as in narrow creeks, or the like.

These fowl, if taken and kept tame, and fed with beasts livers, whey, curds, barley, paste, scalded bran, and the like, are excellent food, far surpassing those absolutely wild, both for plumpness, fatness of body, and also for sweetness of taste.

Of LURCHERS.

Lurchers is a kind of hunting-dog much like a mongrel greyhound with prickt ears, a shagged coat, and generally of a yellowish white colour: they are very swift runners, so that if they get between the burroughs and the conies, they seldom miss; and this is their common practice in hunting; yet they use other subtilties, as the *tumbler* does, some of them bringing in their game, and those are the best. It is also observable that a *lurcher* will run down a hare at stretch.

The TUMBLER.

The name of this dog is derived from the *French Tumbier*, which signifies to tumble; and is called *vertageous* in *Latin* from *vertere*, to turn or tumble; and so they do; for in hunting they turn and tumble, winding their bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the beast, do suddenly gripe it at the very entrance or mouth of their holes and receptacles, before they can make any recovery of self security.

This dog useth also another craft and subtilty; namely, when he runneth into a warren, or fetcheth a course about a coney-borough, he hunts not after them, nor does any way affright them; he shews no spite against them, but dissembling friendship, and pretending favour, passes by with quietness and silence, marking their holes diligently, wherein he is seldom deceived.

F

When

When he comes to a place where there is a certainty of conies, he couches down close with his belly to the ground, provided always that by his skill and policy, that the wind be against him in that enterprize, and that the conies discover him not where he lurketh, by which means he gets the scent of the conies, which is carried to him by the wind and air, either going to their holes, or coming out; either passing this way, or running that way, and by his circumspection so orders his matters, that the filly coney is debarred quite from his hole (which is the haven of his hope, and harbour of his safety) and fraudently circumvented and taken, before he can reach his hole.

Thus having caught his prey, he immediately carries it to his master, who waits for the return of his dog in some convenient lurking place.

These dogs are somewhat lesser than the hounds, being lanker, leaner, and somewhat prick-eared.

By the form and fashion of their bodies, they might be called mungrel grey-hounds, if they were somewhat bigger.

But though they do not equal the grey-hound in size, yet they will in the compass of one day, kill as many conies as shall be a sufficient load for a horse; for craft and subtilty are the instruments whereby they make this spoil.

A SETTING-DOG.

A dog trained up to the setting of partridges, &c. from a whelp, till he comes to perfection; you must pitch upon one that has a perfect and good scent, and is naturally addicted to the hunting of fowl, and this dog may be either a *land-spaniel*, *water-spaniel*, or a *mungrel* between both, or indeed the *shallow-flew'd*, *hound*, *tumbler*, *lurcher*, or *small bastard-mastiff*, but none is better than the *land-spaniel*; he should be of a good nimble size, rather small than thick, and of a

cou-

courageous mettle, which, tho' not to be discerned being very young, yet you may very well know it from a right breed, which have been known to be strong, lusty, and nimble rangers, of active feet, wanton tails, and busy nostrils.

Having made choice of a dog, begin to instruct him at four months old, or six at the farthest, and the first thing you should do, is to make him loving to, and familiar with you; the better to effect this, let him receive his food, as much as can be, from no other hand but your own, and correct him rather with words than blows. When he is so far trained as that he will follow none but yourself, and can distinguish your frown from your smile, and smooth words from rough, teach him to couch and lie close to the ground, first by laying him often on the ground, and crying *lie close*, and then rewarding or chastizing him, according as he deserves; in the next place teach him to come creeping to you, and if he offer to raise his body or head, you must not only thrust the rising part down, but threaten him with an angry voice, which if he seem to slight, give him a small jerk or two with a whip-cord, lash, and often renew his lessons, till he become very perfect in them.

Then teach him to lead in a string or line, and to follow you close at your heels, without trouble or straining his collar; after he has learned these things, take him into the field, and give him his liberty to range, but still in obedience to your command, and if he commits a fault, give him due correction.

As soon as you see him come upon the haunt of any partridge (which may be known by his greater eagerness in hunting, as also by a kind of whimpering and whining voice, being very desirous to open, but not daring) you ought then to speak to him, bidding him to take heed, or the like; but yet, if he either rush in, or spring the partridge, or open, and so the partridge

escapes, then he ought to be severely corrected, and cast him off again, and let him hunt in someplace where you know a covey lies, and see whether he has mended his fault ; and if you catch any with your nets, give him the heads, necks, and pinnions, for his encouragement.

Of GREYHOUNDS.

A greyhound is a hunting-dog that deserves the first place, by reason of his swiftness, strength, and sagacity in pursuing his game ; for such is the nature of this dog, that he is well scented to find out, speedy and quick of foot to follow, fierce and strong to overcome, yet silent, coming upon his prey unawares.

Some derive the name of this hound from *Gre*, which is an abbreviation of *Degree*, because among all dogs they are the most principal, having the chiefest place, and being surely and absolutely the best of the gentle kind of hounds.

The best sort of them has a long body, strong and pretty large ; a neat sharp head, sparkling eyes, a long mouth, and sharp teeth ; little ears, with thin gristles, a strait broad and strong breast, his fore legs strait and short, his hind legs long and strait, broad shoulders, round ribs, fleshy buttocks, but not fat, a long tail, and strong and full of sinews.

Of this kind, those are always fittest to be chosen among the whelps that weigh lightest, for they will be sooner at the game, and so hang upon it, hindering it's swiftness, till the heavier and strong hounds come to offer their assistance ; and therefore, besides what has been already said ;

'Tis requisite for a greyhound to have large sides, and a broad midriff, so that he may take his breath in and out more easily : his belly should also be small, (which otherwise would obstruct the swiftness of his course) his legs long, and his hairs thin and soft : the
Hunt-

Huntsman is to lead these hounds on his left hand, if he be on foot, and on the right if on horseback.

The best time to try to train and lead them to their game, is at twelve months old, tho' some begin sooner with them, with the males at ten months, and the females at eight months old, which last are generally more swift than the dogs : they must also be kept in a slip while abroad, till they can see their course ; neither should you run a young dog till the game has been on foot a considerable time, lest being over greedy of the prey he strain his limbs too much.

The *greyhounds* are most in request with the *Germans*, who give them the name of *windspil*, alluding to their swiftness ; but the *French* make most account of those that are bred in the mountains of *Dalmatia*, or in any other mountains, especially of *Turky*, for such have hard feet, long ears, and a bristly or bushy tail.

As to the breeding of *grehounds*, in this you must have respect to the country, which should be champaign, plain, or high downs.

The best vallies are those of *Belvoir*, *White-horse*, *Evel-holm*, or any other where there are no covert ; so that a hare may stand forth and endure a course of two or three miles. As for high downs and heaths, the best are about *Marlborough*, *Salisbury*, *Cirencester*, and *Lincoln*.

Tho' these places are very commodious for the breeding and training up of *greyhounds*, yet some are of opinion that the middle, or most part of arable grounds, are the best ; tho' others who dwell on downs or plains, to keep up the reputation of their own dogs, affirm, that they are more nimble and cunning than vale dogs are.

It is a received opinion, that a *greyhound* bitch will in common beat a *greyhound* dog, by reason that she excels him in nimbleness ; but if it be considered that the dog is longer and stronger, that opinion will seem to be a vulgar error.

Here you may take notice as to the breeding of *greyhounds*, that the best dog upon an indifferent bitch, will not get so good a whelp, as an indifferent dog upon a good bitch.

And observe this in general as to breeding; let the dogs and bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal age, not exceeding four years old; however, to breed with a young dog and an old bitch, may be the means of producing excellent whelps, the goodness of which you may know by their shapes, in the following manner.

In the breeding of *greyhounds*, in the first place,

The dieting of GREYHOUNDS, consists in these four things, food, exercise, airing, and kennelling.

The food of a *greyhound* is two-fold, general; that is, the maintaining of a dog in good bodily condition; and particularly, when a dog is dieted for a wager, or it may be for some distemper he is troubled with.

The general food of a *greyhound* ought to be chip-pings, crusts of bread, soft bones and gristles, the chip-pings scalded in beef, mutton, veal or venison broth; and when it is indifferent cool, then make your bread only float in good milk, and give it your *greyhounds* morning and evening, and this will keep them in good state of body.

But if your dog be poor, sickly and weak, then take sheeps heads, wool and all, clean washed, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a pot; and when it boils, scum the pot, and put good store of oatmeal into it, and such herbs as pottage is usually made with; boil these till the flesh is very tender and feed your dog with this morning and evening, and it will recover him.

If you design your *greyhound* for a wager, then give him his diet bread as follows.

Take half a peck of good wheat, and half a peck of the finest, driest oatmeal, grind them together, bould
the

the meal, and having scattered in it an indifferent quantity of liquorice and anniseeds, well beaten together, knead it up with the whites of eggs, and bake it in small loaves, indifferent hard, then soak it in beef or other broths; and having walked him and aired him half an hour after sun-rise in the morning, and half an hour before sun-setting, give him some of it to eat.

The exercise of a GREYHOUND.

He ought to be coursed three times a week, rewarding him with blood, which will animate and encourage him to prosecute his game; but forget not to give the *bare* all the just and lawful advantage, so that she may stand long before the *greyhound*, that thereby he may shew his utmost strength and skill before he reap the benefit of his labour.

If he kill, do not suffer him to break the *bare*, but take her from him, and clean his chaps from the wool of the *bare*; give him the liver and lights, and then take him up in your leash, lead him home, and wash his feet with some butter and beer, and put him into the kennel, and half an hour afterwards feed him.

Upon the coursing days, give your hound a toast and butter or oil, in the morning, and nothing else, and then kennel him till he go to the course.

The kennelling *greyhounds* after this manner breeds in them lust, spirit, and nimbleness: it also prevents several dangerous casualties, and keeps the pores close, so as not to spend till time of necessity; therefore suffer not your hound to go out of the kennel, but at the hours of feeding, walking, coursing, or other necessary business.

Of TERRIERS.

A *Terrrier* is a kind of hound, used only, or chiefly for hunting the fox or badger; so called, because he creeps into the ground, as the ferrets do into the coney-burrows,

burrows, and there nips and bites the fox and badger, either tearing them in pieces with his teeth, or else halting and pulling them by force out of their lurking holes ; or at least driving them out of their hollow harbours, to be taken by a net, or otherwise.

The huntsmen have commonly a couple of terriers, to the end they may put in a fresh one, as occasion serves, to relieve the other.

The time proper for entering these terriers is, when they are near a year old ; for if it be done within that time, they will hardly after be brought to take the earth, and this entering and fleshing of them may be perform'd several ways.

When foxes and badgers have young cubs, take your old terriers, and enter them in the ground ; and when they begin to bay, you must hold every one of your terriers at a particular hole or mouth of the earth, that they may listen, and hear the old ones bay.

After you have taken the old fox or badger, so that nothing remain within but the young cubs, couple all your old terriers, and put the young ones in their stead ; encouraging them by crying, *to him, to him*.

And if they take any young cub within the ground, let them alone to do what they will with him ; and do not forget to give the old terriers their reward ; which is blood and livers fried with cheese, and some of their grease, shewing the heads and skins to encourage them.

Another way is, to take an old fox or badger, and to cut his nether jaw away, leaving the upper to shew the fury of the beast, tho' he can do no harm with it, or else break out all his teeth ; then dig an earth in some convenient place in the ground, making it wide enough, that the terriers may the better turn therein, and have room enough for two to enter.

Cover the hole with boards and turf, first putting the fox or badger in, and then your terriers, both young and old ; which when they have bayed sufficiently, begin

begin to dig with spades, and mattocks, to encourage them, against such time as you are to dig over them ; afterwards, take out the fox and badger, with the chumps or pincers, killing it before them ; or let a greyhound kill it in their sight.

Of ANGLING.

Of FISHING-RODS and TACKLE.

AS for your tops, halle or yew switches gathered about the middle of *December*, when most free from sap, are accounted very good, though the two following, or preceding months, may reasonably serve, run them over a gentle heat, to make them tough ; let the stock and tops be taper, smooth and strait, the pieces of each rod suitable in an exact symmetry, free from knots, or else they will be deficient in casting, and never strike well, nor be truly pliable, but at a knot be apt to break, and spoil your sport. To keep them in good order, bind them close to a straight pole, and so let them continue long, that they may not warp, fasten a loop of silk or horse hair at the end of it with shoemakers thread, that the line may have play on it, and tho' many use silk lines, yet I prefer the horse hair as the best ; and in twisting or braiding, observe an exact evenness, for one hair being shorter than the rest in a link, the whole stress will lye on that, and in breaking, renders the rest much the weaker, and often a good fish is lost for want of this observance ; make your knots sure, that they slip not ; as for the colour of the hair, it being free from nits or goutiness, which some call botches, the pale, waterish colour is the best to deceive in a clear stream, but in wheyish or muddy water, you may chuse indifferently a line ; for the ground angle need not be so strong as that you intend for your rod at the artificial fly, abating in the latter a hair from top

to bottom, in every link from one or two, to six or eight, or more.

As for the hook, it must be long in the shank, and of a compass somewhat inclining to roundness for if the shank be strait, the point will stand out-ward ; fasten the hair on the inside of the shank, to preserve it from fretting whether you angle at top or bottom ; proportion your hook for strength and compass, to the number of hairs you angle with next it, neither use great hooks to small baits, nor great baits with little hooks ; *barbel chub* must have large hooks ; *carps, eels, tench, pearch, breams*, those of a much lesser size ; and experience teaches. *Trouts* in clear water. *Graylings, smelts, roaches, salmon-smelts, dace, ruff, and gudgeons* are soonest taken with small hooks, though many use great ones for the *trout*, especially in muddy water, yet the *salmon* must be angled for with a hook according to his strength ; hooks for dubflies should be generally small, and so for cod baits, but larger for worms, yet such as some use for the latter, do not generally take in clear water : when you whip your hook, which is stiled arming, do it with silk lightly rubb'd with shoemakers wax, twisting it round on the lower part of the line, almost to the bent of the hook on the inside, having first smoothed the shank of the hook with a whetstone ; and for worms let it be red coloured silk, but for cod-bait, pasts, &c. white.

Floats should be of cork for river-fishing, but for ponds, meers, and other standing water, quill and pens will do very well, and in very slow rivers, especially when you are to angle near the top with tender baits or pastes : as for your cork, let it be the finest, free from holes or flaws, bore it through with a small hot iron, thrust in a quill fizable, shap'd with a knife to the likeness of a pyramid, egg, or pear, a proportionable bigness, and with a pumice-stone finely smooth it ; run your line through the quill, and wedge it in with the
upper-

uppermost hard part of the quill, the smaller end of the cork being towards the hook, and the bigger towards the rod ; let the cork be so poised with lead on the line, that the quill standing directly upright, the least bite or nibble may sink the cork.

To lead your line, do it with a shot cloven, and then closed exactly on it ; but not above two of these on any line, and that an inch and a half, or two inches distant from each other, and the lowermost plumb, seven or eight inches from the hook ; but for a running line, either in clear or muddy water, nine or ten inches, and if you find a sandy bottom in a river, it being full of wood, with few stones, shape your lead a diamond-fashion, or to that of a barley-corn or oval, bring the ends very close and smooth to the line, yet make it black, for the brightness will scare the fish.

It is very necessary to have a landing net and hook, or you may lose many large fish, by breaking line or hold, before you can land him. The net you may fasten to the end of a long manageable pole : as for the hook it must be a large one with a scrue, to scrue into a socket at the end of a pole, and when your fish is entangled, clap it into the mouth of it, and draw it to land ; but this latter is chiefly for *barbel*, *salmon*, and other strong fish.

As for your pannier, let it be of light osier twigs, neatly woven and worked up, and to be the more completely prepared on all occasions, have in a readiness divers sorts of hooks, lines, links ready twisted, hair, and silk of several colours, small strong thread, lead plummets, shoemakers wax, and floats of divers sizes, line cases, whet-stone, penknife, worm-bags, boxes, baits, scissars. And thus having pretty well accoutred my angler with tackle, it will be next necessary to know what baits he must use, for on that mainly depends success or frustration.

Baits

Baits bred on trees, herbs, plants, worms; their season, and what fish take them; when and how, &c.

Baits for the sundry kinds of fish are numerous, and many of them must be considered in their proper season, or they are of no value; as for earth-worms, they are accounted a general bait, they and gentles are always in season, earth-bobs only from *Martinas* till the latter end of *April*, cow-turd-bobs from thence till *Michaelmas*, oakworms bred of trees, plants and herbs, palmers, or wool-beds, flies, caterpillars, cod-baits, &c. all the summer. Tho' here it is requisite to note, that when one sort of baits come in season, the other are not entirely useless. If you are to angle in clear water at the ground, it will be necessary to have with you cod-baits, worms, gentles and bobs, to try which will best take, but in muddy water for *trouts*, with the running line; you are requir'd for better sport, to have tagtails, gilt tails, brandlings, meadow-worms, some scour'd in moss and water, others directed with a riddle, and some again with heavy earth; for almost at the same time they will take them, some one way done, and some another, as experience has often demonstrated.

But to come nearer, and shew you what your baits are, and how shap'd, and to be chosen.

1. The gardenworm, lob-worm, or treachet and dew-worm, are one and the same, though in divers places their names thus alter, and this worm one of the greatest size is an excellent bait for *chevin*, *salmon*, *barbel*, or *eel*, tho' the smaller of the same kind are not much affected with them: that with a broad tail, a red head, and a streak down the back is the best, they are found in the latter end of the summer, in the evening, in gardens, church yards, and may be driven out of the earth with the juice of walnut-tree leaves and water, pour'd on their holes.

2. Marsh

2. Marsh or meadow-worms are found in marshy ground, or in banks of rivers in fertil mould, being somewhat blueish, and being well scour'd, it will be tough and lively, and is a very good bait especially in *March, April, and September*, for *pearch, flounder, beam, smelt, gudgeon, salmon, trout, grayling*; tho' many, and not without success, use from *Candlenas* to *Michaelmas*, and in moss and water it may be kept fifteen days before use.

3. Brandlings, red-worms, and gilt-tails, are found in old dunghills, rotten earth, cow's dung, hog's dung, or tanner's bark, when it is us'd and cast by. The brandling and gilt tail are especially good for taking *pearch, tench, bream, salmon, gudgeon, smelt*; they are taken by *trout* and *grayling* in muddy or clear water, and the red-worms, well scour'd, are taken by *tench, pearch, and bream*, and best in muddy water.

4. The worm call'd tag-tail, is of a flesh-colour, having at his tail a yellow tag, near half an inch long, found in meadows, after a shower of rain, or in chalky ground, in *March* and *April*, if the weather be temperate; this is held an extraordinary good bait for a *trout* in cloudy weather, and a little scouring will serve it.

5. The palmer-fly, palmer-worm, wool-bed and cankers, are counted one and the same, being bred on herbs, trees, and plants, not being properly a caterpillar, yet the shape of one, being in the outward part rough and woolly, being excellent baits for the *chub, grayling, trout, dace, or roach*. The palmer-fly and may-fly are held the foundation of fly-angling, and have usually good success.

6. The oak-worm, caterpillar, cabbage-worm, crab-tree-worm, or jack, colwort-worm, or grub, may be long kept with the leaves of those trees or plants, that breed them in boxes, with holes for air, or in withy bark, they take *chub, roach, dace, and trout*, the oak-worm being preferable to any who breed on trees or plants,

plants, being the best taken on the top of the water, tho' you may go as deep as you will with them; to get these, search the colewort or cabbage leaves, beat the oak, or crab-tree, or haw-thorn; some of them are hard and tough, others smooth and soft, some horned tailed, others have them on their heads, some smooth, others hairy.

7. Bobs, of these there are two sorts, they are found in sandy or mellow ground, especially after plowing: the one is justly called the earth bob, white grub or white bait, being much bigger than a gentle, having a red head, the body soft, and full of white guts, the other is lesser, and somewhat blueish, found many times in digging on heaths; they are excellent baits from *Mid-april*, to the first of *November* to take *tench*, *bream*, *trout*, *chub*, *roach*, *smelts*, *salmon*, *dace*, and *carp*; they must be kept in an earthen vessel, with the earth you find them in, covered very close to keep out the cold and wind; some boil them about two minutes in milk before they use them, which makes them tougher and whiter, others dip them in honey or gum-ivy for *carp*, *bream*, and both ways prove successful.

8. Gentles or maggots, may be kept with flesh, and scoured well with wheat-bran; they are easy to be had, or bred by putrefaction. These are sometimes added to a worm on the hook, sometimes to a dub-fly, and so take *salmon-smelts*, but oftner used by themselves two or three on a hook; the day before you angle, put them into a box with gum-ivy, and it will prove successful to your sport; they are good baits for *tench*, *barbel*, *bream*, *bleak*, *gudgeon*, *trout*, *dace*, *chub*, *carp*.

9. Flag-worms, or dock-worms are the same, found among flags, in old pits or ponds, viz. The small fibres of the flag-roots, by opening little husks, it is pale, yellow, or white, longer and slenderer than a gentle, and these may be kept in bran, and are good baits for *bream*, *tench*, *roach*, *carp*, *dace*, *bleak* and *perch*: when
you

you fish with it for the *grayling* use the smallest line, and the float, and fish nine or ten inches from the ground.

10. The bark-worm or ash-grub, are all one, being very full and white, bent round from the tail to the head, the head being red, and the parts very tender, resembling a young dorr or humble-bee, and may be used all the year, but particularly from *Michaelmas* to the middle of *May* or *June*, and except the fly and cod-bait, is the best for *grayling*, *dace*, *roach* and *chub*; it is found best under the bark of an oak, ash, elder, or beach; especially when fell'd and they have lain about a year, or in the hollow of these trees when standing, where doated to rotten; it is a very tender bait, and best on a bristled hook, by running the hook in at the head and up the belly, till it stays on the bristle, and no part of the hook's point appears out of it; they are kept well in wheat bran, and take the *grayling* with the smallest line; angle with the float, keeping the bait seven or eight inches from the bottom; but if you fish with it for *roach*, *chub*, or *dace*, use in different tackle.

11. There is a bob found under a cowturd, called the cow-turd bob, from the beginning of *May* to *Michaelmas*; some call it a clap-bait; this is like a gentle, but bigger; you may keep it sometimes in mois, but the best is to keep it in earth, dug up under the place where you find it; it is a very good bait for *trout*; if you angle with it on a bristled hook, on the top of the water, and in the water, it is taken by *chub*, *carp*, *bream*, *tench*, *dace*, and *roach*.

12. The cod bait, cad-bait, cadisworm, or case-worm, are one and the same bait, though of three sorts. The one is found under stones that lie loose and hollow in small brooks, shallow rivers, or very fine gravel, in a case or husk, and when fit for purpose, they are yellow; they are bigger than a gentle, having a black or blueish head. Another sort is found in pits, ponds, slow-running rivers, ditches, in cases or husks of rushes,
water-

water-weeds, straw, &c. and are by some call'd ruff-coats, or straw-worms; these are accounted principal baits for *bleak, salmon, smelts, tench, bream, chub, trout, grayling, and dace*. The next is a green sort, found in pits, ponds or ditches, in *March*, coming before the yellow ones, for they are not in season till the end of *April*, and in *July* are out of season; the third sort is proper in *August*, being smaller than the other. These must be kept tender in woollen bags when you carry them for use, but to keep them long alive, in a green withey bark, taken off and hollowed like a trunk, lay it in the dew to moisten it.

Natural flies for baits, their seasons, and where to be found, for what fish they are proper, &c.

1. The ant-flies are found in their hills, about the end of *July, August*, and most part of *September*, with the earth you take with them, they may be kept in glass bottles; two or three of these fixed on the small hook, are certain baits for *chub, roach* and *dace*, if you angle under water not above six inches from the bottom.

2. The brood of humble bees, hornets and wasps are good baits, dry them over a fire, or in an oven, so not being over done, they will last long, and sit handsomely on the hook, to take *chub, eels, bream, flounders, roach, or dace*; some boil them, but then they will not keep long; hornets, wasps, and humble-bees, may be used alive, when their wings are a little grown and their legs short, especially for the *chub*, as also the black-bee, breeding in clay-walls.

3. The fern-fly or fern-bob, is found among fern from *May-day* to the end of *August*, it is thick and short of body, has two pair of wings, the uppermost reddish and hard, which may be taken off: the last ten days of *May* the *trout* will take it every day, and the *chub* refuses it no part of the summer.

4. The stone-fly and green-drake. The first of these

these is found under hollow stones at the river-sides: the body of it is pretty thick, and almost as broad at the tail as in the middle, it is of a curious brown colour, streaked a little with yellow on the back, but much more on the belly; he uses the water much, and seldom flies though he has large wings that double on his back; he comes in about *April*, and continues till about the end of *June*, and is a very killing fly of *roach*, *dace* and *bleak*: and the green-drake had his wings standing high like a butter-fly, and his motion in flying the same, the body is in some of a paler, in others of a darker yellow, ribbed with rows of green, long and slender; his tail turns up his back, having three long whisks at the end of it; he comes in about the middle of *May*, and continues till *Midsummer*, and is found by stoney rivers: with this bait for *flounders*, *dace*, *bleak*, *roach* and *perch*.

5. The great moth that has a considerable big head with whitish wings, is to be found in summer evenings in gardens, on trees and plants; it speedily take *chub* if you dabble with it.

6. The hawthorn-fly is black, found frequently on hawthorn-trees, when the leaves are but out, the best use this can be put to, is to dabb in a river for *trout*.

7. The ash-fly, woodcock fly or oak-fly, is the same, under different names, and holds good from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*, its of a brownish colour, and usually found in the body of an oak, or ash, standing with his head downwards towards the root of the tree, and is a very good bait for a *trout*. And to make speedy work, put it long ways on the hook. and at the point a cod-bait, and let them sink six inches or a foot into the water, raise it gently, and having a short dabling line, you need not fear *trouts* in clear water, and instead of a cod-bait, if you have it not, you may use an oak-worm or green grub, you may dub this, or make it artificially with isabella, coloured mohair,

mohair, and bright brown bears-hair, wrapped on yellow silk. These being the principal flies used in angling, I now come to mix'd baits of another nature.

The *bonnet-fly* comes in season in *June*; is to be found amongst any standing grass, and is an excellent bait for *chub*, *dace*, &c.

Miscellany of BAITs very taking, and much in use.

1. *Salmon* spawn boiled, and fastened on the hook, is a very good bait for *chub*, and in some rivers for *trout*, it being advantageous to the angler, especially in winter and spring if he keeps it salted; especially in places where *salmon* used to spawn, for thither the fish gather to expect it.

2. Grasshoppers the latter end of *June*, all *July* and *August*, if their legs and outward wings be taken off, especially for *roach*, *trout* and *grayling*, and here you, put a slender plate of lead on the shank of your hook, slenderest at the bent, then draw your grasshopper over it, after put a lesser grasshopper, or cod-bait at the point, and keep it moving, lifting up and sinking again; a *chub* will also take the bait freely, and so will a *trout* if you dib with it.

3. The water-cricket, water-house or creeper is but one, these take *trout* in *March* and *April*, and sometimes in *May*, if you angle at the river: it is to be angled with in clear water, within a foot of the bottom, some let it drag on the ground. This creeper is bred in stoney rivers, and held to turn into a stone-fly, about the middle of *May*, that fly not being any where seen before.

Lamery pride, or seaven, is a very good bait for *chub*, and *eels*, night or day: this is no other than little live things like small *eels*, no thicker than a straw, and are to be found in sandy, muddy heaps, near to the shoar in rivers.

Snails, the black and white, are good baits for *chub*,
very

very early in the morning, *trout* and *eels* take them on night-hooks, but the bellies of the black may be slit, so that the white may appear; some dib for *chub* with house crickets.

For *chub*, *barbel*, *roach*, and *dace*, you may angle with cheese or oat-cake, especially at the ledger-bait; the cheese you may wrap up two or three days in a wet linnen cloth, or moisten it over with honey and water.

As for a *pike*, he is a greedy devourer, and therefore mostly delights in fish, frogs, &c. therefore your baits for him must be small *dace*, *minnows*, *roach*, *salmon-smelt*, *gudgeon*, *bleak*, *millers-thumb*, also *trout* and *eels* well scour'd in wheat-bran, to take away the slime; and indeed most sort of small fish he takes, and how you are to manage them on your hook, I shall tell you when I come to treat of the taking him in the river of *thames*. *Periwinkle*, a kind of water-snail, is much used for *roach*, being taken whole out of its shell: *shrimps*, taken out of their husk or shell may be us'd as a bait for *chub*, *roach* and *dace*.

Pastes proper for the angler.

Pastes are of several kinds, tho' tending to one and the same end: for a *chub* or *chevin*, make a paste of the fattest old cheese, the suet of a mutton kidney, a little strong runnet, mix them equally and finely together, then put as much powder of turmeric as will give them a fine yellow colour.

For *roach* and *dace*: grate fine bread into a little fine water, wherein gum ivy has been soak'd. For the *barbel* in *August*, make a paste of new cheese and mutton suet. For *roach* or *dace*, you may put a little butter to your crumb-bait, and colour it with saffron. For *carp* or *tench*, mix crumbs of bread, with honey, though for a *carp* I reckon this the surest.

Take bean-flower, or for want of it, wheat-flower;

the inside of a leg of young rabbit, catskin, or whelp, white bees-wax, and sheeps suet proportionable; beat ^{em} in a mortar, till well incorporated, then moisten the mass with clarify'd honey, and work it up into little *balls*, before a gentle fire.

The *chub* in winter takes a paste made of strong cheshire cheese, beaten with butter and saffron till it become a lemon colour.

Stoned cherries, finely grated manchet, sheep's blood, saffron make a good paste for *roach*, *dace*, *bleak*, *chub*, *trout*, *pearch*; and for the *chub*, only put a little rusty *bacon* in it.

Another excellent paste is made of the fattest old cheese, mutton, kidney-suet, strong runnet, anniseed water, wheat-flour, and the dripping of rusty *bacon* held against the fire.

What is to be observed in angling with pastes.

1. You must proportion the quantity of your paste you put on your hook to the smallest or largeness of the fish you angle for, as in other baits.

2. You may try oils upon any of these pastes, and as you see your success, so continue the one or the other. And the best for this purpose are oil of polypody of the oak, oil of petre, oil of ivy, and as properly gum of ivy, and assafoetida.

3. To strengthen any paste, and so prevent its washing off the hook, it will not be amiss to beat a small quantity of fine flax cut short, cotton wool, or fine lint among them, which will prove very binding; those that you would have keep long, put a little white *bees-wax* into them, and anoint them with clarified honey, the latter you may wipe off when you see occasion.

4. Paste, or tender baits must not be angled with in rapid streams, but on a small hook in pits, ponds, *meers*, or slow running rivers: your eye in this sort of angling

must be quick, your rod somewhat stiff, and a nimble hand to strike or else the bait and fish will quickly bid you farewell. This is better done with a quill float than a cork, which sooner shews the nibble or bite: and if you then be not very quick, your labour is lost, and with these pastes success is usually had for *bream, bleak, chub, roach, dace, carp, tench, barbel*.

Oils and ointments useful in angling.

Take oil of ivy-berries. anoint the inside of an oak-box with it, and put three or four worms, or other live baits into the box, shutting it close; but keep them not there too long, lest the strength of the oil kill them, but take these out and put in more, and so they being scented with the oil, it will allure the fish the more readily to take them. This may be done in the same manner, for want of oil with gum-ivy, which is a tear that flows out of the ivy-stalks when slit, or wounded by piercing.

Oil of spike and dissolv'd gum-ivy, are held to be much attracting, the bait being anointed with them.

Oil of *polipody* of the oak, *venice turpentine*. and new honey is very good, if eight inches of the line next the hook be anointed with it, but then there must be two or three hairs, for it will not well stick to a single one; however, do not clog your line with it.

Chymical oil of lavender, or for want of it, oil of spike six drops, three drams of *assafoetida*, *Venice turpentine* one dram, camphire one dram, make these into an ointment, and anoint them as the former; this in clear waler wonderfully takes *gudgeons*.

The fat of the thigh-bone of a heron, makes an ointment that rarely fails, and is esteem'd by those that have try'd it, the best of any, being a new experiment.

But let me commend to you above others this; take the oils of cammon il, lavender, anniseed, each a quarter

ter of an ounce, heron's greese, and the best of assafoetida, each two drams, two scruples of cummin seed, finely beaten to powder, *Venice* turpentine, camphire and galbanum of each a dram; add two grains of civet and make them into an unguent; this must be kept close in a glazed earthen pot, or it loses much of its virtue; anoint your line with it as before, and your expectation will be strangely answer'd.

Oil of asper so much noised about, and said to be extracted from a fowl called the *Osprey*, is now found to be a mixture of the oil of spike, lavender, and refin'd oil of turpentine, which however has a considerable effect in still or slow moving waters; and observe in this case, your line must be anointed every second drawing up, or the strength of the scent being wash'd off, you may expect your sport to cease.

I might now speak something of artificial flies, and other artificial baits, but not to keep the angler too long from the water, I shall have occasion elsewhere to treat of them.

Fishes Haunts proper to be known.

If you are not certain of any waters to fish in, your business is to try the most likely and promising, viz.

Where trees fallen, wood, rushes, weeds, or rubbish are in rivers, or likely large ponds, there are store of fish promised, for thither they resort for warmth and shelter; but it is very troublesome angling there.

The next are weirs, weir-pools, mill-streams, flood-gates, piles, posts, pillars of bridges, cataracts and water-falls, eddies, whirling-pits, the side of a stream, in the summer especially; for then they love to bask and lie shallow, unless the weather be excessive hot; though I may herein except *carp*, *eels*, and *tench* in the winter, find for the generality the deep as the warmest, in a gentle ebb and flow by the beating of the waters, at any turning or opposing bank, there is good biting, so that

that straight rivers are not so advantageous to angle in, as those that are winding or crooked, having eddies, pits, and pools in them, occasioned by the waters beating on the points and doublings; thence being forc'd back, and into those pits and creeks, the fish will get in some considerable numbers many times, where the water is narrow, try both sides: but to come somewhat nearer.

The *salmon* is found in large swift rivers that ebb and flow, gravelly and craggy. The *trout* mostly in purling brooks and rivers that are somewhat swift, and have sandy bottoms. The *carp* and *tench* love still waters, or such as gently move, where weeds or roots of trees are near to shelter them on occasion. *Eels* generally covet muddy rivers, ponds, or slimy sands, especially those of the larger size. The *pike*, *bream*, and *chub* are mostly found in sandy or clay rivers, brooks or ponds, wherein bushes, bulrushes, or flags grow. The *barbel*, *roach*, *dace*, and *ruff*, for the most are found in sandy or gravelly deep rivers, coveting to be under the shade of trees. The *umber* is likeliest to be found in marly or clayey streams, running very swift. The *gudgeon* likes best a sandy or gravelly bottom; yet for all this, a trial of divers waters will not be amiss where you may suspect any fish are likely to breed; for experience in this art is the surest instructor.

Times proper above others to angle in, according to the water, weather, &c.

1. In the hottest months take your opportunity when it is cloudy, and the water is moved by gentle gales.

2. When the floods have carried away the filth, sudden showers incumber the waters too, and the rivers, &c. retain their usual bounds, looking of a palish colour.

3. When a violent shower has mudded or troubled
the

the water, and after that the stream runs swift, for then they usually seek for creeks, and shelter, and in the little rivulet running into the great one.

4. If you fish for *carp* or *tench* do it early in the morning, viz. a little before sun-rise, till eight, and from four in the afternoon, 'till sun-set, when the days are of a convenient length, *June*, *July*, and *August*, but in *March*, the beginning of *April*, and the end of *September*, they refuse not to bite in the warmth of the day, the wind being still.

5. If you angle for the *salmon*, the best time is from three in the afternoon 'till sun-set, and in the morning as before; his proper months are *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. The *barbel* bites best in *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *August*, from five to eleven in the morning. The *pearch* and *ruff* all day in very cool and cloudy weather. The *bream* bites from sun-rise, till nine or ten in the morning, in muddy water, especially when the wind blows hard, for the most part keeping in the middle of the river or pond in *May*, *June*, *July* or *August*.

6. The *pike* bites in *July*, *August*, *September* and *October*, about three in the afternoon, in gentle water, and a clear gale. In *Winter* he bites all the day long, and in *April*, *May*, and the beginning of *June*, early in the morning and late in the evening. As for *roach* and *dace*, they bite all the day long, if the weather be not in the extremities of heat or cold, on the top of the water. The *gudgion* bites best in *April*, and till he has spawned in *May*, and if the weather be cool, till wasp-time, and at the end of the year all day long in a gentle stream; observe when you angle for him, to stir and rake the ground, and he will bite the better. As for the *flounder*, though he is found only in ebbing and flowing rivers, that have communication with the sea, he bites freely all day in *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*, in a swift stream; he will bite in the still, but not near so freely.

Ground

Ground baits to gather and feed the fish, that you may better and readily know where to find them, &c.

The ground-baits, or for baiting the ground, are barley or wheat soft boiled, which, for prevention of scattering, you may mix with some pleasant fresh earth, ale-grains, wheat-bran steep'd in sheep's blood, clotted, dried, and cut in small pieces, periwinkles bruised in their shells, black and white snails, worms cut in sunder, and made up in little balls of earth. The guts of fowl, the small guts or livers cut small, old cheese and oat-cakes bruised together, malt grossly ground, these especially gather *tench, dace, carp, chub, roach, bream* and *barbel*; and the more you feed them, they will be the surer to keep to that place, and be the fatter to reward your pains when taken; and these throw in a little above the place you angle at, if it be a moving water, for before they ground, the stream will carry them some distance from the place you throw at.

These are especially good when you angle with the cod-bait, gentle, wasp, or paste; for it will make them take your bait more eagerly, and with less suspicion. And this directs you to the *pike* or *pearch*, for if those fish you angle for be not there, and no others have circumvented you, nor the season improper, then are these two devourers of fish lurking thereabouts; and the rest dare not approach for fear of being made a prey; therefore use suitable tackle and baits to take them, and then other fish will boldly approach.

When you angle in clear water, keep out of sight as much as may be, shelter'd behind some bush or tree, or by standing as far off as possible, keep your eye only on the surface of the water, where your float is, and to effect this the better, your rod must be proportionable in length, to answer the place you fish at, and especially at the ground, and a long rod and line at

G

artificial.

artificial flies are very necessary. An angler must add silence to his patience, and move his body as little as possible may be, for the fish are very quick-sighted, and naturally fearful, particularly the *chub*, *carp*, and *trout*.

When in a clear water you angle at the ground, or with a natural fly dibble, always do it going up the river, but in muddy water, or when you do it with a dib-fly, use the contrary ; if you have hooked a fish, and suspect the strength of your line or rod, let him play and tire within the water, before you offer to bring him near the top ; be sure to keep the rod bent, lest running to the end of the line, he breaks his hold, or the hook, and if he be tired, and has in a manner done flustering, bring him towards the top, and if there be occasion, use your landing-net or hook ; and take this for a general rule in hooking all strong fish.

How to take the salmon and salmon-smelt by angling, &c.

The *salmon*, tho' not found in many rivers in *England* is of principal note for river fish, tho' it as well belongs to the sea. The chief rivers noted for them are the *Thames*, *Severn*, *Trent*, *Lon* at *Lancaster*, and about *Cockersand-Abby* at *Workington* in *Cumberland*, *Bywell* in *Northumberland*, *Durham*, *Newcastle on Tyne*, *Dee* in *Cheshire*, and some rivers in *Wales* ; as *Urk*, *Wye*, and *Tivy* ; he commonly is found in the water deep, and about the middle. They spawn in *September*, and come in season the beginning of *March*.

His best biting is at nine in the forenoon, and three in the afternoon, in clear water, especially when the wind blows against the stream, but not very roughly : then take the baits directed, and the strongest tackle, for when he is struck, he plunges and leaps ; though not usually does he endeavour to go to the end of the line.

The

The younger sort of these are so tender mouthed, that unless you fasten two hooks almost in a quarter of a circle asunder, they usually break hold. For the great *salmon*, the principal bait is well-scour'd dew-worms ; for the *salmon-smelt*, the brandling, gilt-tail, meadow-worm, &c. and for flies, he taketh them natural or artificial ; and if you use these, a cod-bait or gentle at the top of the hook is effectual ; this with the dub-fly takes *salmon smelts* beyond expectation ; but for a greater *salmon*, if your fly be artificial, make it very large, with six wings one behind another, that by that and the different colours, he may suppose it, as indeed it will appear in the water, a cluster of flies. He is taken at the ground with a running line or float, and sometimes he bites lower than mid-water at ground-baits ; he is taken with oak-worms, dub-flies, cod-baits, clap-baits, and the larger sort sometimes take the minow and loach, and for these you may angle with a wyer-ring on the top of the rod, letting the line run through it to a great length, and when he is hooked, and is spent with plunging, fix your land-hook in his mouth, that is screw'd to the end of a pole, as directed to land him. *Salmon* is the best of fish, very sweet, and of extraordinary nourishment : eating it moderately, it restores in consumptions ; if pickled it strengthens the stomach, and begets a good appetite.

Several ways to take the PIKE, and where to find his haunts, &c.

The *PIKE* spawns in *March* ; his usual haunts are in sandy, chalky, or clayey places, somewhat near the banks, for coveting solitude, he often lurks in holes to surprize other fish, as they fearlessly swim by ; sometimes he shelters among bulrushes, water docks, weeds, or bushes ; and then he bates about the middle of the river or pond, at mid-water, and for him you must keep your bait in a gentle motion, and at all times to

be above a foot from the ground ; he rarely bites in the night, for then he is for the most part gone to rest in his retirement. In *April, May, June*, and the beginning of *July*, he does it most freely morning and evening in clear water, and a gentle gale in still water, or a moderate moving one, and in the rest of *July, August, September*, and *October*, his best biting time is about three in the afternoon in water as before : in winter months, if the weather be pleasing, and the water clear, he will not refuse to bite at any time, tho' the most certain time is about three of the clock in the afternoon, if particularly in a gloomy, cloudy day, but the water muddied with rain, there is no certainty of him ; his beloved baits are, *gudgeon, roach, dace, minnows, salmon, smelts*, no bigger than *gudgeons*, a piece of an *eel*, a young *trout*, &c. but all his baits must be very fresh, and a live one tempts him much the sooner, which may be put on by drawing the line between the skin and the ribs of the fish, and so on the hook, fastening it in the gills, and this you may use in trowling, but here have your tackle very strong, with wire about a foot from your hook, the next to it silk, and the rest of the line strong spun flax, come as little as you can near the weeds, lest they spoil your bait before the *pike* comes at it, fasten the tail of the bait to the joint of the wire and having fix'd your tackle, that the line may run and play, let so much lead be at the hook as may carry the fish's head downwards, as if after playing on the top, she was going to the bottom, and when you have sunk it so, that it is at a convenient depth for the *pike*, slack your line, and give it scope that he may run to his hold, and there pouch to swallow it, which you may know by the moving of the line in the water, then with a smart jerk hook him ; some use no rod with this, but lead and float, holding of the line in their hands on links, and indeed there are several

eral methods taken, tho' all to the same purpose; wherefore for brevity sake I omit them.

Angling for him at the snap, is to give him leave to run a little, and then strike, which must be done the contrary way to that which he moves, therefore a double spring-hook is useful in this way of angling, especially for a great *pike* usually will hold the bait so fast in his teeth, that you may fail to pull it out of his mouth, and likewise strike him, when if he holds the spring-hook ever so fast, the wire will draw thro' the bait, and so the spring opening, you will frequently hook him on the outside of his mouth. Tho' trowling is surer than this, and more practicable, yet this is best used in *March*, when the *pike* bites ill, then upon spawning they are sick, and lose their stomachs, bait this as the former, and he may be taken this way when he is so. A *pike* is more excellent than *carp*: sick people may eat it: cross-bone in the head against falling sickness: spawn or row provokes vomiting and stool: heart eaten cures fevers; they are reported to live two hundred years.

Other brief rules for PIKE angling.

1. When the *pike* has taken your bait, observe how he moves; if slowly, give him time, and he will rarely miss him; let not your bait fall in one and the same place above once or twice, for if he take it not, then he is farther off.

2. If you find, after he has taken the bait, he lies still as sometimes he will, move your hand gently, to give notice which way his head lies, lest in striking you happen to pull the bait out of his mouth, if that cannot be discern'd, strike directly upward: at the snap have strong tackle, and give two lusty jerks one after another, fastening a swivel at the end of your line, which must be us'd at trowl and snap, and your armed wire must be hook'd on it.

3. For the snap, have a hollow piece of lead, that it may pass over the wire and end of the hook, which you draw within the fish's gills or mouth, that as directed, it may keep the head downward, and at either of these baitings, if you cut away one of the fins of the bait close at the gills, also behind the vent, and one on the contrary side, it will play the better, and seem more lively.

4. Be sure to raise your hand in casting, when the bait is about to fall into the water, so that by dashing, it may not fright him away, and when it is sunk a little draw it near the top towards you a little, and so let it fall again; and if your wire hook is joined with a steel ring, the bait will play better, and sink more direct: for snap, *March* is the chief month, *February*, *April*, *May*, *September*, and *October* for the trowl; and tho' a large bait invites him most, yet a lesser takes him more surely, but let your bait be suitable to your hook; and this way with a *minnow*, *loach*, or small *gudgeon*, you may take *pearch*; and if possible, always trowl in clear water in a windy day, and then a *gudgeon*, will do well for the *pike*, but if a dark cloudy day, *roach*, *dace*, or *bleak*, are to be preferr'd.

To snare a *pike*; when you perceive him raise, and staying near the surface of the water, fasten about a yard and a half of strong packthread to a pole, and at the end of it a running noose of small wire, softly putting it over his head, with a quick jirk throw him to land; this is often done to young *piques*, but the older are more wary tho' sometimes catch'd by this means, especially in ponds, as also when they come out of rivers, and go a frogging in ditches, in *March*, *April* and *May*.

To find an angle for PEARCH.

The *pearch* spawns the beginning of *March*, and delights in a good stream of a moderate depth, abiding
usually

usually close by a hollow bank, pebbly, gravelly bottom'd, with green weeds growing in it; being commonly a river fish: he bites little in winter, but in the middle of the day, yet in summer all day, if the weather be cool and cloudy, and the water shaken with the wind; but more freely from seven till ten in the morning, and from two in the afternoon till six, and sometimes till sun-set; if in the middle of summer, you must look to him when he is struck, for he is a very strong fish, and will struggle hard and long; they generally go many together; and if there be a great many in a hole, if you light right on them, you may at one standing, catch the greater part, if you give them time to bite; but if you are too hasty in striking, you may chance to miss your aim; he takes almost all manner of worms; as, dew-worms, red-worms, meadow-worms, cod-bait also the *minnow*, *loach*, small frogs, wasps, hornets, and humble bees.

He is best taken with a float, resting the bait about six inches from the ground, and sometimes he is taken about mid-water: some use a ledger-bait on the ground, but the first depth has usually the best success.

To angle for the CARP, &c.

This fish has always been in great esteem, making many industrious to find ways to take him. He delights in sandy or muddy bottoms, in still deep water, by the sides of a pond or river, tho' in a good pond he thrives best. He is very wary, and hard to be catch'd. His first spawning time is about *May-Day*, breeding three times a year, and wonderfully encreases if he likes the water he's in: he lives long, tho' most disagree as to the particular number of years; and indeed I see no reason how that should be exactly known.

He bites very early in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, and sometimes all night if the weather be hot and star-light: in the still deep water, if you angle in

the day-time, keep out of sight as much as may be therefore provide a long rod: he is very strong, and must play when struck, or he'll carry off your hook by breaking the line or rod.

Use always the float and quill, angle for him sometimes above, and sometimes below mid-water, as the weather is, tho' in mid-water he is the certainliest taken, especially in a pond, but in rivers he is very shy: lay a ground-bait for him with ground malt.

The baits you use on your hook must be gentles, or three on the hook; he takes likewise bobs, wasps, sweet pastes, marsh-worms, flag-worms, gilt-tails, dew-worms, the cod-bait and bread-grain boil'd soft; and in *June* and *July*, in the heat of the day, he shews himself on the top of the water, and ofteneft among weeds, when you may take him with a well-scour'd lob-worm, angling as with a natural fly; but in this case keep out of sight as much as you possibly can. A *carp* is a numerous breeder, as spawning three or four times a year, and therefore as a caution to those that stock ponds with them, let them be warm, and secure from cold winds, fenc'd by trees, and the place allowing good feed, or otherwise (the *pond* being over-stored) they will starve themselves and other fish that are with them.

Carp is a fat and sweet fish, and nourishes much.

Observations on the TENCH, and the best way to angle for him.

The *tench* spawns the beginning of *July*, is reckon'd a very good fish, much coveted, yet delights in muddy or foul water, and among weeds, the ponds that are suitable for *carp* please him better than the rivers, and in pits he thrives better than in either, if they be agreeable to time, tho' in some pits they will not (notwithstanding they breed) come to any bigness; and in others they will not breed at all, but they will thrive
won-

wonderfully, beyond expectation: this I believe may happen where the storer is not skilful to distinguish males from females, but by an unlucky guess puts in all of one sort. Tho' he covets mudd, yet his fins are very large; and to know him from others, there are two little barbs at the angles or corners of his mouth; his scales are small and smooth, and about his eyes are circles of a golden colour. He is accounted the physician to the rest, so that the devouring *pike*, being sick, is cured by him, and will not, unless hunger provoke, hurt or destroy him, tho' he spares not his own kind. This gift of healing is said to be by a medicinal balm sweating from his skin, which the sick fish take in as *physick*; and indeed, his flesh is good in consumptions (or any languishing of the parts) for men. They bite best from day light to eight in the morning, and from four in the afternoon till sun-set; but in the hot months, if the weather be not tempestuous, they many times bite all night. The best season is from the beginning of *May*, to the end of *September*.

He takes the *cod-bait*, *marsh-worm*, *gentle*, *flag-worm*, or *red-worm* well scour'd; and to make it take the better, you may dip your bait in a little tar-water just before you use it, tho' the plain bait many times pleases him well. For want of the former baits, you may use pastes sweeten'd with honey.

Angle for him with a float of quill, letting the bait into the water two foot, sometimes more or less, but no great matter.

The BREAM's haunts, and how to angle for them.

The *bream* spawns in the beginning of *July*, is a large bony fish, is found in rivers and ponds, but in the latter if convenient, he delights most: he is long growing, and will be very fat, and is almost as great a breeder as the *carp*.

Breams swim divers together in a gentle stream
 G 5 loving

loving a sandy, or clayish bottom, and the deepest and broadest part of the water. Your best time in the season is to angle for him from sun-rise to eight o'clock, in a moderate stream, the water being a little slimy or muddy, especially when a good breeze troubles the water; and in windy weather, if in a pond, he generally keeps the middle, and there you are most likely to find him. In the afternoon, your time is from three or four till sun-set; but in a darkish windy day he bites at any time.

He is angled for with much success from the beginning of *April* till *Michaelmas*, and may be taken at other times, except the very cold months.

He takes as baits, flag-worms, gentles, grasshoppers, their legs being off; red-worms, gilt-tails, and meadow-worms well scour'd, bobs and under water-flies, especially the green ones; when he bites, he runs off with the bait to the farther shoar, or as far that way as he can, and therefore you must give him play, for though he seems a fish made strong enough, he will not much struggle, but after two or three turns he falls on one side- and may be easily landed.

Here you must angle with a float, so that the bait may touch the ground; you may make a ground-bait for *bream* with malt, and it will draw them together.

The BARBEL, how to find and take him by angling.

The *Barbel* spawns in *April*, sometimes in *May*, is a very strong fish, and takes his name from the barbs that hang at his mouth, is curiously shap'd with small scales. In the hot months you will find him in the swift strong streams, tho' he shuns the current, and delights somewhat more out of the rapidity, under shades of trees, and weeds, where they rout in the sands like a hog, and so nest; some suppose him to eat much gravel and sand, but I rather fancy he seeks for insects or other food that heat and moisture produce

duce in the bottom of shallows, yet sometimes he is found in the deep and swift waters, especially at weirs, bridges or floodgates, where he shelters among piles, or on hollow places, holding by the moss or weeds, to prevent his being carry'd away by the stream ; when winter is coming on, he retires to the still deep.

His best biting time is early in the morning, that is, from the sun rising till ten, and from four till the sun sets, and often later, add this principally happens from the 20th of *May* to the latter end of *August* ; you must be wary in taking of him, for he is very subtle, and struggles long, unless well managed ; many are found together frequently, but in *April* they are little worth, for then is the spawning time.

As for the baits you intend to take him with, care must be taken that they are very sweet, such as give him not distaste : angle for him with a running-line, and a bullet at the end. He takes gentles, not over-scour'd, dew-worms, new cheese, paste, the young brood of wasps and hornets ; and so cunning he is, that you will be cheated of many a bait in angling for him, if you have not a watchful eye, and a quick hand ; for he will nibble and suck it off, and ten to one, when your float sinks, and you attempt to strike, whether he has the hook in his mouth, yet often, if you strike the contrary way his head lies, you may take him by the nose, and give him play till tired, or else, if he be any thing large, unless your tackle be very strong, part of it goes with him. He is not an over-pleasant fish to eat, by reason he is somewhat dry, and very full of bones. Some say he is easy of concoction, his eggs and spawn vomit and purge violently.

The TROUT's haunts : the best way to angle for him, and his baits.

The trout spawns in *October*. His usual haunts are
in

in small purling brooks, or swift gliding rivers, not too great. Observe whether their bottoms are pebble, gravel, or smooth stones; for on the sides of these he usually has his residence, though he is often found in the deep, especially a large one, also behind banks, blocks, stones, at turnings or points, where the stream much beats, or makes a kind of whirling; he loves coverture and shade, from whence he may most easily seize his prey; but his hold or hole is usually in deep places; he is seldom found among weeds, rather among boughs of trees that hang in the water, or shady bushes: he plies in spring at the tail of the stream, but, as many other fish do about the middle of *May*, at the upper end, staying long in a place, if his hold be near it. In the hot weather he leaves the deep, and goeth into the sharp streams among gravel, unless by the excessive heat of the weather, droughts ensue, and then the still deep delights him.

This *trout* may be taken by dibbing, or if the weather be dark, cloudy, and windy, you may take him with the cast-fly. He is in season from *March* untill *Michaelmas*, but chiefly about the end of *May*, when he is in the best season; his body is adorned with red spots. The female is counted better than the male: they much affect to be near the source or spring of rivers, and where they run on lime stones, there the best of *trouts* are found.

Angle for him at the ground with a running line, with two or three small pellets of lead, omitting the float, or you may take him by float-angling at the ground, if you are dexterous at angling with a single hair, two links from your hook, he is much sooner taken than with two or three hairs, though you must be cautious he break not the line; and this is better done at the bottom than top, because there he has not so much force to shoot and spring, as on the top, and a single hair next the hook, if well chosen and strong
will

will take one of thirteen inches, if there be water-room, free from wood and weeds.

He bites best in a water that after a flood is clearing, or rising, somewhat troubled, cloudy and windy weather ; early in the morning is the best time from the middle of *April* to the end of *August*, from sun-rising till near eleven, and from two till sun-set ; but at nine in the morning, and three in the afternoon are the best times, at the ground or fly as the water is most agreeable, in *March*, the beginning of *April*, *September*, and till the 15th of *October*, and then you must cease angling for the *trout*, to the end of *February*, after a shower has fallen in the evening ; you will find him rise at a gnat. In warm weather you may dib for him with the minnow or loach.

As for other baits than what I have mentioned, the principal are at the ground, brandlings, gilt-tails, tag-tails, meadow-worms, and for the greater, dew-worms well scoured, the two first hold him all the seasons, either in muddy or clear waters, the rest do well when the water is discoloured with rain, you may use a cod-bait, either for top or bottom ; but then it must be in clear water ; he taketh the palmer-fly or wool-bed, and all sorts of artificial and natural flies at the top of the water. When you bait with small fish, as the minnow, bull-head, and loach, cut off their fins, and the gills of the latter, and so with these instructions, and a little practice to ripen experience, depend on success.

The EEL, the haunt, bait, and taking them, &c.

There are many disputes about the generation of *eels*, whether they generate and breed as other fish do, or proceed from putrefaction, enliven'd by heat and moisture ; but my business being to instruct you how to come by them, I shall lay no stress on that nicety,
since

Since *eels* there are, and for their delicacy, are call'd by some, *the queen of fish*.

His haunts, in the day-time, are usually under the covert of tree-roots, brushwood, planks, or piles, about flood-gates, wears, or mill-dams, in hollow holes in banks, they mostly delight in foul still water, or at least such as runs very slow, with oufy sand, or muddy bottoms, in pits, ponds and meers.

Bait for him with a young lamprey, dew-worms, scour'd earth worms, and very small fish, their fins cut off, guts of chickens, or other fowl, cut in small lengths, lean beef, the brood of wasps; the four first take him day or night, but most of the rest are proper for night-hooks.

Take him in the day by a ledger-bait, by snigling, bobing, brogling; as for brogling and snigling, the best method I have known is this: get a long and strong line, your hook of a small compass, baited with scour'd red-worm, or dew-worms, having one end of your line in your hand, place very easily the upper end of your hook in the cleft of a hazel rod of a convenient length so that it may slip out as you please, and where you fancy the *eel*, to be, let the bait leisurely sink, and supposing it swallowed by giving time leisurely, draw him up by little and little, easy lying double, with the strength of his tail, your line is endanger'd. This you must practice in hot weather, the waters being low.

As for bobbing, take large earth-worms out of good mold, scour them well in moss, and run a strong thread with a needle through them endways, as many as will lightly wrap a dozen times round your hand, make them into links, and fasten them to a strong pack-thread or whipcord, two yards long or more; make a knot about six or eight inches from the worms, put about three quarters of a pound of plummet, made pyramidically on the cord, by the means of a hollownes

or hole bored through it, and let it sink to the knot, fix the cord to a manageable pole. Angle with this in muddy or cloudy water, in the sides of the streams or deeps; when the *eel* or *eels* tug, let them be well fasten'd by the teeth, before you draw them up, then do it gently, 'till on the top, and then hoist them quickly to land: many by this way have been taken at a time.

Some, near *eels* haunts, sink a bottle of hay loosely bound, stufft with fowls guts and liver, cut in long shreds over night, and coming early the next morning, drawing it up hastily by the rope, fasten'd to the band, find large *eels*, bedded in it, for the sake of the *prey*. This may be done with a bundle of the brush-wood, out of which, upon pulling up, they cannot so easily get.

To angle, &c. for the grayling or umber.

Though this fish has two names given it; the former for the lesser sort, and the latter for the greater, yet both are the same species.

Their haunts are in marly clay; clear water, and swift streams, the large is accounted eighteen inches, being in season all the year, but their prime is in *December*, when his gills and head are blackish, and his belly a dark grey, studded with black spots. He will bite freely, but is very tender mouth'd, therefore be careful he break not his hold, though he will not struggle much, as being very faint when he is hooked. Angle for him in or near the middle of the water, for he is always more apt to rise than descend, wherefore he is chiefly taken by a ground-bait, rather than a running line; use for him a float of cork, if you particularly angle for him, but for a *grayling* and *trout*, the running line is best.

As for baits, he takes brandlings, gilt-tails, meadow-worms, tag-tails, the bark-worm, flag-worm, cod-bait, natural or artificial flies, particularly the canlet fly,
and

and a fly made of purple wool, and one made of tawny chamblet hair, also the earth-bob, and clap-bait.

The POPE or RUFF, his haunts, how to angle for him with proper baits, &c.

The *pope* or *ruff* is one, in shape, nature, and disposition, like the *pearcb*, though in bigness not exceeding a large *gudgeon*, but of a more pleasing taste; he bites eagerly, and many of them are usually together, where the water runs slowly, and is deep in sandy places, fifty of them have been taken at a standing. You may bait for him with the small red-worm, gilt-tail, meadow-worm, and other baits proper for the *pearcb*, he biting at the same time the *pearcb* does; you may ground bait with new turned up earth of a fallow, also with a clear sand, you may take him with a single hair, the link next the hook, the body of it is rough, and hath prickly and sharp fins; it has its seasons and nature like the *pearcb*, and is a very wholesome fish, eating short and tender.

There are abundance of them to be killed in *Moul-sea* river in *Surry*.

Some particular observations on GUDGEON angling.

The *gudgeon*, tho' not over large, is approved, among other fish, as a dainty, being very wholesome food. This fish spawns twice or thrice in the year, he delights in sharp streams, with gravelly or sandy bottoms, and shews the young angler extraordinary good sport, who not being well skilled in chusing, or not well knowing how to come by other baits may take him with a small red-worm on the ground, or very near it, and seldom, by reason of the toughness of his mouth, he is lost when struck. In the heat of summer they make to the shallows in rivers, but when the weeds in autumn grow of a bad taste, or rot, and cold weather comes on, then they get together in deep places; and
here

here it is properest to fish for them at the ground, or a little above it, if you fish with a float ; but it may be done with a running line on the ground, without a float : as for particular baits, I have already discoursed of them, and among others, those relating to the *gudgeon*.

The BLEAK or BLEY, to angle for him, &c.

This fish makes sport, tho' not much valu'd, not being very wholesome, it is many times destroy'd by a worm that breeds in his stomach ; in hot weather he bites eagerly, and you may fish for him with several hooks on one line, and if you catch three or four together on the several hooks, do not fear the breaking of your line, tying them about half a foot one above the other ; he is easily taken with gentles, small red worms, and any small flies at top water, by dibbing or whipping for them.

Angle at middle water, or at the top, for he is usually in motion : there is another sort of these called the *black sea*, better and wholesomer than this, call'd by some the *sea camelion*, because in the winter he seems often to change his colour. He is as good as any *carp*.

The CHUB or CHEVIN, his haunts, and to angle for him.

The *chub* spawns in *March* is large, tho' timorous ; is found in large rivers, having sandy or clayey bottoms, delights much in streams shaded with trees, as also in holes where many of them consort together : he is in season from the middle of *May* 'till after *Candlemas* ; you may take him dibbing on the top of the water, but in the hot months he keeps mid-water ; in the colder weather angle at the bottom with the ledger-bait.

He bites from sun-rising 'till eight, and from three till sun-set ; the large one when struck, is soonest tired, the less will struggle longer, and in sun-shiny weather they bite, in winter the middle of the day.

He

He scarcely refuses any bait, if not too large ; as, lampreys-pride, the *eel's* brood, dew-worms scoured in moss and gravel, clap-baits, small snails, white and black cheese paste, the marrow of an ox or cow's back, a beetle with the legs off, and all sorts of baits bred on trees, plants and herbs, cod-baits, broods of wasps, hornets and humble-bees, the fat of rusty bacon, dors, grasshoppers, also a fly, and a cod-bait, and an oak-worm on the hook together, infallibly takes him in the hot months.

When he is taken, he must be eaten the same day, else will not be so good ; most esteem his head the best part.

DACE or DARE, and ROACH, their haunts, baits, &c. and how to angle for them.

As these delight in ponds or rivers with gravelly bottoms or sand, so they love deep clear waters, shaded with trees, either in rivers or else-where ; the *dace* spawn about the middle of *March*, and are in season three weeks after. The flesh is soft, and sweet in taste.

You must angle for the *dace* within two inches of the bottom, and sometimes the bait may touch it if it is worms, but if with flies, at the top of the water, or within an inch.

The *roach* spawns about the middle of *May*, and is so healthful, that his soundness has created a common saying, tho' it often causes some to tell lyes. The best *roach*, by reason of the abundance of soil, are found in the *Thames* near *London*, angle for him about two foot in the water : in temperate weather they bite all day long. The float angle takes 'em best.

Their baits are numerous as their fry, *viz.* worms bred on trees, plants, or herbs, gentles, cod baits, grasshoppers with the legs off, flies artificial or natural, particularly the ant fly, meadow-worms, scowr'd bread-corn boil'd. The *roach* in ponds is chiefly found under

under the water-docks, if there be any, and indeed few small come amiss to them.

The FLOUNDER or FLOOK's haunts, baits, and angling.

It is properly a salt-water fish, and is no where but in rivers that have communication with the sea; he's brought up by the tide, and loosing himself into fresh streams, he after some time minds not his way back again. He loves gentle streams, gravelly and sandy bottoms, is very shy, and not easily taken: he bites all the day in *May, June, July*, and the beginning of *August*, tho' he will nibble much about the hook, and suck off the bait, if you be not wary to keep it in motion, which hinders him from seeing the hook, if he does, away he flies from it, sometimes in the shallow. He takes scoured meadow or marsh-worms, earth-worms, gentles, the brood of wasps, gilt-tails and brandlings. He is to be angled for with the float, and your bait must touch the ground. He's of good nourishment, strengthens the stomach, causes appetite, and helps the spleen.

To take the SMELT with an angle.

As this fish generally lies at the tail of ships, or in brooks, so you fish for him at half-tide, with a gentle. The first you catch cut in small pieces about the bigness of a gentle, bait your hook with them, and you'll find sport to admiration.

The MINOW or PERCH, LOACH, and BULL-HEAD or MILLER'S-THUMB, LAMPREYS.

As they are rather baits for other fish than valuable in themselves, so the first is taken with small worms, brandlings, and gilt-tails; the two latter with gilt-tails, meadow-worms at the ground. *Lampreys* are taken as the *eel*, being much of that nature, therefore I avoid enlarging thereon.

Minnows

Minnows feed by licking one another; the *loach* is good for women with child, and are all very nourishing.

Observations on, and rules for, natural fly-angling.

It is a nice point in angling, requiring a quick or sharp eye, and wary hand; it is term'd by artists, *dibbling*, *diping*, or *dapeing*, and is performed on the surface of the water, or at most sometimes not letting the *bait* sink above two or three inches under, nor that, unless the *oak fly* for the *chub* or *trout* has joined to it a *clap-bait* or *cod bait*.

This must ever be done in clear water, without lead or float, in the evening of a hot day, but in a hot calm day is best, and the still deep is to be preferred before the stream; though on the side of a stream when the water is clearing after great rains or a flood, is very proper; and all hours you may dib with the green *drake-fly*; but if you needs must do it in the stream, use the *stone-fly*; which is proper early or late; if it be windy in the evening, take the artificial *stone-fly*, for then in the stream the fish rise best, and are the soonest taken; and if you pull off the wings, you may angle in the water with it; it will also take very much in a stream near the bottom, but you must take care to keep out of sight as much as possible, and keep your fly in motion, that it may appear to the fish to be alive.

In dibbing for *dace*, *roach*, or *chub*, let not your motion be swift, if you can perceive any of them coming toward it, but make two or three short removes, as if there were a rest, or the fly were swimming or playing; then let it gently glide with the stream if possible toward the fish; but if it be slow or standing water, you must keep it moving with your hand, not just upon him, but sideways and sloping by him, lest it should escape him, it will make him mind it the more; for
only

only the *trout*, if it be moved swiftly, will of any certainly follow it.

In a calm, dibbing is not so safe as when a pretty good gale stirs the water, for then neither you nor the deceit put on the fish by an artificial fly is so easily discovered ; and then few natural flies at liberty can lie on the water ; but for want of choice they will snap at the first that comes in their way, biting more eagerly thro' hunger. If they will not rise at the top, try them a little lower, for some will be sooner taken, as the *roach* particularly, by dibbing under water than at the top. *Roach*, *dace*, and *chub* will sometimes be pleas'd with an artificial fly, especially if an earth-bob, cod-bait, earth-worm, or gentle, be put on the point of the hook ; or an oak-worm is very pleasing on the top or under the water.

At dibbing and trailing, *trout* and *salmon-smelts* will take an artificial fly well, particularly the *stone-fly* and *green-drake*, early, or late in the evening. And if you fish for *salmon-smelt*, *roach*, *chub* or *dace*, with the dub-fly, put on a gentle, wasp, cod-bait, or clap-bait ; let it stand well on the point of your hook when the wind furls the waters, and few flies appear on or over it, this is the best time to angle with the fly either natural or artificial ; for, having no variety or choice, they will quickly take your bait. If it be a sun-shiny day, get under the shade of trees if you can, that neither your shadow nor that of your rod may appear, and so fright them away. If you find the fish rise not toward the top, sink your fly by degrees, and try even to middle-water, for before the sorts of flies are naturally in season, the fish very rarely rise at them ; wherefore to know this, that you mistake not in your baiting, observe what flies are on the water, or flying near over it, or are on the bushes or trees near ponds or rivers, and that fly which swarms there most is chief in season, and is to be used either natural, or to be imitated

tated by art. Some open the first fish they take, and look in its stomach to see what indigested food there remains, and from thence do take their measures, tho' uncertain; for either it must be partly consumed, or so discoloured that it cannot well be known; besides, fish for extream hunger take in such food at one time as at another they altogether dislike.

You may for other baits found in rivers, grope in the sandy bank-sides within the water, under the stones, or observe what insects are playing or swimming in or on the surface of the water, and accordingly provide yourself seasonable baits. In *May* you may dib with oak-flies, fern-flies, or oak-worms for *trout*, and all summer with the fern-fly for *chub*, keeping the bait moving on the top of the water, as if it were alive, and yourself out of sight as much as possible.

Artificial fly-Angling.

Artificial dub-fly or cast-fly angling is somewhat more difficult, and requireth more cunning than the former, being more readily learned by seeing it done, than by printed directions; however, I doubt not but to give a satisfactory account of it to the angler.

The first thing to be materially considered is, to know and chuse the proper colours of flies in season when you angle, and these must be proportioned to the places you fish in; for there are different haunts of flies, and are found much earlier in some places than in others, as the season proves hot or cold; a warm spring brings them early, but the contrary later, sometimes by a month, and always sooner in high grounds than in those that are low, marshy or boggy.

And though sometimes upon disgust, fish suddenly change their fly, yet it is not usual until they have been glutted with one sort, which must be some time first, and when that sort of fly is near going out; nor will they freely take them till they are at their best, and
most

most plentiful : and it always follows, when one sort goes out another comes in ; which you must have a special regard to observe, and make the change with them.

The fly required being got, your next business is, to make one in colour, shape, proportion of body and wings as like it as possible, always having the natural one as a pattern : and to do this, you must have in readiness bear's hair of diverse colours, camel's hair sad, light and of a middle indifferent colour, badger's hair, spaniel's hair, sheep's wool, hog's hair, hog-down, as is comb'd from the roots and bristles of a hog, camblets and mohairs of diverse colours, cow's hair, abortive calves and colts-hair, furs of squirrels tails, the tails of black cats, yellow and dun cats, of hare's neck, the fern-colour'd ferret's fur, martin's yellow fur, filmer's fur, tails of white weasels, moles, black rabbits, down of a fox's cub, ash-colour at the roots of fox, fur that comes off the otter and otter-cub, blackish and brown badger's hair that has been in a skinner's lime-pit ; hackles or feathers about a cock or capon's neck, and such as hang loosely down each side the tail, of various colours, particularly to make the palmer-fly or insect call'd the wool-bed : you must have feathers of all sorts of fowl, and those colour'd ones required that you cannot get natural, you may dye.

You must likewise have *caddows* or *blankets*, from which are got dubbings, or soft cushions made of skins of abortive calves and colts, like silver wire, gold twist, white and yellow bees-wax for ground work, or to frame the bodies and heads on, as the nature of the fly more or less requires it, and a neat pair of sharp pointed scissors, to trim and shape the work with.

How to make the dub-fly.

Wet your materials to know how they will hold colour,

colour, for, tho' dry, they may appear of the right colour, but may alter being wetted, and consequently be too light or too dark. This done, take the hook in your left-hand, betwixt your fore-finger and thumb, the shanks back upwards, and strong silk of that colour the fly requires, wax it with wax of the same colour, then draw it to the head of the shank betwixt your finger and thumb, and whip it about the bare hook two or three times; draw your line between your thumb and finger, holding the hook so fast, that it may only have a space to pass by; so joining the hook and line, put on the wings, fashion the body and head, by twisting the dubbing on your waxed silk, and lapping it on, then work it by degrees toward the head, and part the wings of an even length; or the fly will not swim upright; then turn it into a proper shape, by nipping off the superfluous dubbing from the silk, so fasten and accoutre the fly. It would be convenient to see one done by an experienc'd angler, and then these directions will be easy to you.

Directions relating to dub-flies, and angling with them.

1. When you proportion your *dub-fly*, consider the largeness or smallness of the fish you intend it for, and be sure the belly of it is the exact colour, because that is most obvious.

2. Let not the tail of the fly be only to the bend of the hook, and not come unto the bent of it.

3. If the *trout* at the top of the water refuse it, the day is not proper for it, or the fly is either out of season or ill made.

When you angle with the *dub-fly*, it must be in such a river or water as is clear, after rain, or in a river a little discoloured with moss or bogs, in moorish places, or else in a cloudy or gloomy day, when the water is stir'd by gentle gales; or if the winds be pretty high

high they will rise in the plain deep, but in little wind, the best is to angle in the stream.

Keep your fly in continual motion in all weathers, to prevent the fish from discerning the fraud ; in clear and low water, let the body of the fly be the smaller, and the wings very slender. In dark weather and thick water, let the fly be of a darkish colour, but it must be pretty large body and wings, the better to be discovered ; in a clear day, a light coloured fly is preferable.

A rod for the dub-fly should be five yards at least, and the line about seven, or somewhat more, if the water be free from incumbrance of weeds, &c. and to adapt your fly to the colour of the water more properly, have three of the sort, the one light, the next a degree darker, and the third the true colour of the natural fly ; by trying all which you may gain the more experience ; for one of them cannot well miss. In slow rivers, muddy and slimy bottom'd, in great drouhts expect little success, but rather chuse pebbly, sandy, or stony bottoms, in a running stream, which much cools and refreshes the fish in the hot months.

Let your eye be steady on what you are about, and your hand ready to strike when it is convenient, which is with the rising of the fish ; or he, finding his mistake, will throw out the hook again : but for a great fish, I must hold it proper to let him turn his head with the bait, which will less strain your tackle, for so he will strike himself, and then do it moderately.

Upon casting, do it with a little circling about your head, by waving the rod, or else the fly may with too smart a jirk be apt to snap off ; cast the fly behind a trout, at his rising, and so with a gentle hand, draw it over his head, so that not scaring him, he will quickly take it, if it be the right colour.

In casting, observe to do it always before you, that it may fall on the water, and no part of the line dash,

H

to

to scare away the fish : and do it if you can without making any circle in the water : But if the winds be high, some part must be in the water, to keep the fly from being blown out. Take your standing so, if possible, that the sun may be in your face, and wind to your back.

In still or slow water, cast your fly almost a-cross the river or pond, and draw it towards you gently a little way, that you break not the water, or put it in trouble, and let it bear with the current, if there be any, fishing downwards and not upwards of the river. Thus having, as I hope, given plain instructions in these matters, to be understood by easy capacities, I proceed to describe artificial flies, for the proper month of angling with them.

Artificial FLIES, proper in the month of the fishing season, how to make them.

In *February*, the palmer-fly or plain hackle must have a rough, black body, which may be done with black spaniel's hair, or the whirl of an ostridge feather, and the red hackle of a capon, all over.

The prince dun, that may be dubbed of the down of a fox cub, with ash-coloured silk, the wings of a stare's feather ; this must be made little.

The little red, brown dub, with the soft hair of the black spot of a hog's ear, the wings of mallard's feathers, near the white, wrap it on with red silk.

March. The green-tail may be made of the brown hair of a spaniel, taken from the outside of the ear, and a little from the extream of the tail.

Morish brown may be dubbed with black sheep's wool, red silk, and the wings made of a partridge's wing-feather.

Thorn-tree fly dub, of a very good black, mix a little *Isabella* colour'd mohair ; with it make a little body, and the wings of a *Mallard's* brightest feather's.

The

The early *bright brown* make of the hair of a brown spaniel, that of the flank of a red cow, and wing it with the grey feather of a wild duck.

April. The violet-fly, which takes excellently from the sixth to the tenth, made of bear's hair a light dun, mix'd with violet stuff, wing it with the greasy feathers of a *mallard*: The horse-flesh fly, which lasts all this month, dub with pink colours, blue *mohair*, and *tammy*, let the head be a dark brown, and the wings of a light colour.

The small bright brown is very well taken in a clear day and water, make it of spaniel's fur, with a light grey wing.

May. The green drake, an excellent killer, dub on a large hook with *camel's* hair, bright bear's hair, soft down comb'd from the bristles of a hog, mix yellow camlet; let the body be long, and rib it with green silk mixt with yellow; let the whisks of his tail be the long hair of *fables*, his wings the light grey feather of a *mallard*, dy'd yellow.

The stone-fly dub, with dun bear's hair, mix it with a little brown and yellow camlet, that she may be yellower on the belly and tail than any other part, to be the better liked by the fish, who mostly eye the belly of baits; and to adorn it the more, place two or three hairs of the beard of a black cat on the top of the hook, in the whipping or arming, and in warping on your dubbing, staring one from another something upright: rib her with yellow silk; make the wings long and large, of the dark grey feather of a *mallard*, or other such-like feather.

The grey drake comes in when the great ones go out, much of shape with it, but in colours differs, and must be made of a paler and more blewish yellow and green, his ribs quite down his body must be of black, with black shining wings very thin, and may be made of the grey feathers of a *mallard*, the down under hogs

bristles, and the black hair of a spaniel, and the wisks of his tail, of the beard of a black cat.

June. The ant-fly is dubbed with brown and red camlet, the wing of the feathers of a ligh grey pidgeon.

The purple-fly, with purple wool, mix'd with light-brown bear's hair, the wings of a stare's feather, dub it with purple silk.

The brown hackle made of the lightest brown hair of a somewhat grown colt, with a red hackle or cock's neck-feather over it, wrap'd with *hair-colour* or *ash-colour'd silk*.

July. Orange-fly, dub this with orange-colour'd cruel or wool, and the feather of a black-bird's wing.

The wasp-fly. Do this with brown dubbing. or else with the hair of a black cat's tail ; rib it with yellow silk and make the wings of the grey feather of a *mallard's* wing.

The blue dun must be made with the down of a water-mouse, and the blewish dun found on an old fox ; mix them well together, and dub with sad ash-coloured silk ; the feather's of a stare's quill will furnish you with wings.

August. The late ant-fly may be dubbed of the hair of a cow that is of a blackish brown, and for the tagging of the tails wrap in some red, and make the wing of a dark feather : this fly takes admirably.

The fern-fly must properly be dubbed with the wool taken from a hare's neck, of the colour of fern, when dry, make the wings of the darkish grey feather of a *mallard*.

The hearth-fly, dub of the wool of an aged black ewe, with some grey hair to accommodate the body and head, dub with black silk, and take the light feather of a stare for the wings.

September.

September. The little blue dun made of the fur of a water-mouse, dub it with sad ash-colour'd silk, and wing it with the feather of a blue pigeon.

The late badger. Do this with badger's hair that's black, whip with red silk, and use a darkish gray mallard's feather for the wings.

The camel-broom fly, pull out for dubbing, the hair in the lime of old wall, whip it with red silk, make the wings of a stare's lightest feather.

October. This month is supplied by the flies of the former, for all being now upon their going away, and almost any will do. And thus, reader keeping to my intended brevity, having pick'd you out the best killing flies from a great many more, you by knowing how to make these may easily imitate all others, having a natural fly before you, and chusing materials suitable to its colour, by shaping her according to the other; then promise yourself success in angling with her as as directed.

Thus I have given the best directions I could, relating to artificial flies, but those who do not care to trouble themselves with making them, may have of all sorts very well made at Mr. John Hero's, in Bell-Yard, Temple-Bar.

Various, but curious OBSERVATIONS in ANGLING; divers ways to angle, not commonly known.

Note, that sometimes all sorts of fish take baits at the ground, when but some sorts will take the fly at the top of the water; and therefore to angle for a trout with worm, chuse the running line without any float, only small plummetts in their proper places. This is successful at the ground, either in clear or muddy water.

As for the latter, use a line a little more than half the length of the rod, and sometimes less than that

length, and the lowermost links must be at least three hairs, and one at top of four, whereof have a water-noose at its bottom ; so proceed with links of five or six hairs a piece, 'till you come to the top-most, make the lower of *chestnut-colour*, or *sorrel-brown*. Then to your reed or cane, have a top neither too stiff nor too feeble, but between both ; the cane about three yards and a half long, and the top about a yard and a half, or near two yards, in one or two pieces, and five or six inches of whale-bone, smooth round and pliant.

Observe to lead your line as is consistent with the water, in rough streams more than in small gentle streams, and least of all in still water ; then carry the top or point of your rod level with your hand, and so you will by the point of your rod perceive the bite at the ground, then strike strait and gently upwards, and by a little flacking your hand before, you will give the fish time the better to take the bait.

Some are of opinion, if you know that a *trout* bites, for to strike at the first biting, but this is only allowed in clear water for *salmon-smelts*, *trout*, and *grayling* ; and the bait is the best red worms scour'd, or a brandling and gilt-tail, turned head to tail, and run cross ways through the middle, under the wings, and so you may do in muddy water with other *worms*, as two *brandlings*, two *meadow-worms*, &c. A *trout* will seize on the bait when it drags on the ground, either in clear or muddy water, but a large *grayling* will rather rise a foot or more at your bait from the bottom, than descend.

If a large *trout* you angle for in muddy water, then it requires some art in baiting of your hook, as suppose the bait is a dew-worm, here you must thrust the hook in towards the tail, a little above the middle, and out again below the head, then draw him above the arming of the hook, or whipping, so put the point into the head of the worm, until it is very near the
place

place where the point of the hook first came out, and so draw back the worm, or that part that was above the shank. This hook should be indifferent large.

To bait two worms in muddy water for a *trout*, &c. from eight to ten inches: take meadow worms or brandlings, or a brandling and gilt-tail, and run the point of the hook in at the head down the body, till it pass the knot, or come to the middle of the worm; then strip it above the arming or whipping, not bruising it in any manner with your fingers, so put on the other, by running the hook in the same manner, and let the head of it just cover the point of the hook, then slip the first down till the knots or middle of both worms meet together; and thus you may do by any other worms, for other fish, as by the foregoing directions you find they take them.

Directions for ANGLING with the running line in clear water.

Put a gilt-tail and small brandling on your hook, as before directed, well scour'd, and here your hook must be much smaller than in muddy water, two or three of the lowermost links of your line of a single hair, so rise from two or three, or four, of a grey or dusky white, the line about two yards shorter than the rod, leaded with a small black plummet.

Angle with this in the stream always up it, in a river with a light hand, still casting up the worm before you; let the rod be as the former: and thus you may angle for *salmon-smelts*, *trout*, or *grayling*, to whose *proper* baits I refer you in my treatise of baits in this book.

Directions for the TOP-WATER ANGLING with a worm.

Your line in this case must be longer than your rod, without any plummet or float, drawing your bait

down and up the stream, in a clear day, with a gentle hand, that it may glide as if it were swimming, and your bait here must be a gilt-tail or brandling, keep it from the shore, and free from entanglement of weeds, woods, rushes, or other incumbrances that hinder sport.

Farther directions for FLOAT-ANGLING.

Here your line must be two or three foot longer than your rod in rivers, but in ponds and pits something shorter. Angling in clear water for *salmon-smelts*, *trout*, or *grayling*, you must put but one hair next the hook, but in muddy water, and for other fish, two or three, observing the running line and rod for the *tench*, and proportion this to it, lead it moderately, but so that it may keep the line strait and even; but for *tench*, *carp*, *barbel*, or *chub*, your rod and line must have an additional strength in the thickness of the one, and the number of hairs in the other; and your float manageable in the water, proportioned according to the swiftness or slowness of the water, but with one worm, the water being very clear; and observe for some sort of fish, as *Flounders*, *salmon-smelts*, *bream*, and *gudgeon*, your bait must drag on the ground, but for other sorts, as, *tench*, *roach*, *bleak*, *pike*, *ruff*, and *carp*, at mid-water; for *grayling* and *pearl*, at six or nine inches from the bottom. The *chub* is often taken at bottom, mid-water and top.

You may use the divers sorts of baits, angling with a float, but ground baits are most frequently us'd, and with success.

Directions for DRABLING.

By this, *barbels* of a large size are taken; to do it compleatly, observe these rules.

Have a strong line of six yards, which before you fasten it to your rod, must be put through a piece of lead,

lead, that if the fish bite, it may slip too and fro, and that the water may something move it on the ground ; bait it with a pretty large lob-worm well scour'd, and so by its motion the *barbel* will be entic'd into the danger without suspicion. The best places are in running water near piles, or under wooden bridges, supported with oaks floated and slimy.

Angling with the LEDGER-BAIT.

This is us'd for variety of exercise, to give rest to the angler, and so differs from others that are called walking baits, and this is, when the bait continues to rest in one fix'd and certain place.

Here you must take off your float, but let the lead remain, and within half a yard of the top of the line wrap a thin plate of lead, an inch and a half long, and pretty broad, *viz.* about an inch ; so fasten your line to your rod, cast in your bait either into a still, slow draught, or gentle stream, and when it is at the bottom you may stick your *rod* in the bank of the river, or hold it in your hand at discretion, and by the bending of the rod, or motion of the lead at top, you will perceive when the fish bite : give her some time, and strike contrary to where her head lies. The *chub* and *eel* are successfully taken this way.

To lay NIGHT-HOOKS.

To do this effectually, procure a small cord, which may be about sixteen yards long, and to this, at equal distances, tie five or six fine twisted flax or silk lines, about eighteen inches each, of the thickness of your trowling-line, fasten them so that they may be easily removed, and put on again ; whip to the ends of each of them a pretty strong hook, bait with a loach, minnow, or bull-head, the fins and gills cut off ; or, these being wanting, the seven eyes, *eel* brood, small *roach*, *gudgeon*, the pith of an *ox* or *cow*'s back-bone, &c.

will serve for the fish, put the point at the hook in the tail, and out of the mouth, so that the fish's head may have a resting in the hook's bent, and that the point may not be discovered, cover it with a worm, casting the cord, by a weight, over the river, stream, or pond, fasten both ends to stakes on either side; and be there early in the morning, and expect *chub*, large *eels*, *trout*, or *pike*, but for a *pike* keep the bait with a float about a foot or something more from the bottom.

For this, to gather the fish, you may bait the ground with blood and grains, or sewet made up in sweet earth, taken from under the green soard, or pastes, &c.

Choice RECEIPTS or rare SECRETS, never before made publick.

Take oyl of amber, rosemary and myrrh, an equal quantity, infuse in them any worms, or mingle paste with them, and the fish, if near, will hasten to the bait so dipped, and then not have power to go away, till she either nibbles off the bait, or is taken.

Ground-bait for *carp* with unprickled samphire bruised, and made into balls, with walnut-oil. This likewise allures *tench* and *bream*.

Over-night mix bean-flower with a little honey, wet it with rectify'd spirits of wine, and a little oil of turpentine, make it up into little pellets, and such fish as nibble it, when thrown in, will be stupified, so that in the morning coming to themselves a little, they will bite very eagerly, as being, after their drunken fit, exceeding hungry. This likewise is a sure detainer of them all night in the summer, and so that they will not wander from the place. *Nox vomica*, scraped into paste, makes them drunk, and so that if the water be shallow, you may go in and take them when they rise and turn on their bellies as if expiring, tho' in a little time

time they will come to themselves again ; if the water be deep, you may use a landing net.

I have set down these ointments, but do not recommend them. The industrious *angler* will find more pleasure in catching them by neat angling, than any of these expensive means.

A special WINTER-bait to get and preserve.

When plowing begins in *Autumn*, before any frosts come that are forcible, to make entrance into the earth, observe where the ploughs are going, if there be store of crows lighted on the ground, especially in that which is heathy, sandy, or greenland, follow; and you will find a white worm bigger than a gentles, having a red head, which is held to be bred of the spawn or egg of a beetle, left in those holes she digs in the ground under horse or cow-dung, which, in *March* or *April*, turns to a beetle again : you may put about two quarts of these into about half a bushel of the same mould : when you gather them, put them in a tub or other vessel, where the frost or wind may not come to kill them ; and by this means, when most other baits are out, you may be provided all the seasonable times in winter, and early in spring. They take in those seasons, *bream*, *carp*, *roach*, *dace*, and *chub*.

Gentles may be kept in winter, in bran, moss and scouring earth, lightly over some putrefaction. in which at the first laying them in the ground, where the frost cannot come at them, you perceive they begin to live.

Unseasonable Times to ANGLE in.

Having spoke much of proper times to accommodate the angler, I shall now speak something more of unseasonable ones, that those who are ignorant in this art, as to the niceties of it, may not lose their labour. .

The

The two extrems of weather are not proper, *viz.* (1.) When great droughts have parch'd the earth, so that the rivers carry but low currents when the weather is excessive hot, in the heat of the day, unless clouds cover all, and winds gently breathe. (2.) In frosty or snowy weather, or unhealthy weather, for two reasons, *viz.* because you will little damage the fish, but greatly injure yourself.

In the morning, either in the spring or advancing of the season, if a hoary frost happen, the fish will be backward in biting that day, and little sport can be expected, for they will not freely rise, except in the evening; and soon after they have spawn'd they will not bite to the purpose, till with grass and weeds they have well purged and scowered themselves, so that they may by that means recover their strength and appetite.

'Tis not proper to fish when the north or east winds are sharp.

In brooks that are small and clear, where the water is kept up by mills or dams, it is not good angling, for there especially the *trout* keeps her hole, and others bite faintly.

Some other useful OBSERVATIONS and DIRECTIONS.

Be sure always to keep your shadow off the water, and therefore let the sun be in your face, or on one side of you when you angle, keeping out of sight and making no noise; and when you are bent for *trout*, you need make but three or four essays with the ground bait or fly; for if it comes not then to bite or offer, either there's not any there, or they keep close in their holes.

To catch FISH.

Take nettles, cinquefoil, and chop small, then mix some juice of housleek with it, rub your hands therewith,

with, and throw it into the water, and keep your hands in the water, and the fish will come to them, that you may take them : or, take heart-wort and lime, mingle 'em together, and throw it into a standing water, and it will fox them, that you may take them with your hands.

To take a PIKE as he lies sleeping and sunning in fair weather, with a loop or net.

March and *August* the best times. Take a long pole of rod that is light and strait, on the small end fasten a running loop of twisted horse-hair and silk, of a large compass, which gently draw on him when it is five or six inches over his gills, hoist him up, if 'tis a small *pike*, draw it not so far on, and make no noise in walking or speaking : if he lies so that you cannot conveniently noose him, touch his tail with the rod, and he'll turn as you please, also with a hand net, putting it gently under water, guide it just under him, and lift it softly till you just touch him, and then do it as quick as you can.

To invite FISH.

If you take *coccus Indicus*, and make little balls of it with cummin, old cheese, wheat-flower, and wine, (let the balls be no bigger than pease) and throw them into a standing water or calm places where fish are, all that taste of it will be presently stupify'd, swimming to the shore as if they were drunk, so that you may take 'em with your hand.

To make and order FISH-PONDS.

Moorish ground, and such as is full of springs is best, the first breeds them well, the last prevents their being stoln ; next, let your pond be so ordered, that it may receive the rain-water that falls from the hills, for that mightily refreshes 'em ; and if your pond can
receive

receive the piss of horses, and other cattle, they'll *produce* the largest and fattest fish. Let your pond's head be at the lowest part of the ground, and let the flood-gate have a quick and swift fall, that when you go to empty it, you may not be too long about it: in building your pond, the best way is to drive a row of stakes of 6 or 7 foot long, and 6 or 7 inches square, and at 4 foot distance; elm is better than oak, drive them in the length of the pond's head, and ram the first row four foot and a half deep, then they'll be strong. Next, dig your pond and throw the earth among the stakes and piles; when they are covered well, drive another row over them, and ram the earth in the void places, that it lie close and keep the water in the better; and thus you must continue stake on stake, ramming the earth till the head be as high as you would have it.

Let the inside of the dam be smooth, that no current may have *power* over it; let *your pond* carry six foot water, and be eight foot deep, to receive the rains that fall into it: floor the bottom with large turfs of flot-grass, close join'd and stak'd down; stake also on the pond-side several faggots of light wood, but not oak, for that's bitter and offensive: these faggots shelter the fish, and after they cast their spawn preserve from vermin, and preserve the young fish from devourers; let them also have some retiring places by roots of trees, hollow banks, both to cherish them in cold and heat, and *preserve* from danger carp, tench, and bream store by themselves: *perch* and *pike* by themselves: put into it either *minnows* or *dace*, but *roach* are injurious to all ponds and great breeders. Ponds with strong sandy bottoms, that lie warm and out of the wind, with nut-trees and willows also sheltered; are the best for carp to breed in, and new made ponds breed better than old, that are full of weeds and mud, therefore every three years cleanse them from

from the mud filth. To make a store pond, sow it; put in all *spawners*, or all *millers*; observe, that store ponds afford the largest and fattest *carp*. In a breeding pond put three *spawners* to one *miller*. Draw your pond about *Allhallontide*, and keep of females a sufficient number for breeding. Indeed, you ought not to kill any of 'em, *they'll* live and breed 50 or 60 years; but you may kill all the males that are above three years old, and put the rest, that are three, two, or one year old into the pond again, as many of 'em as the pond will maintain: this do once every year.

Mr. *Worlidge* says, that dead, heavy, and more gross waters are most proper for *carp*, *tench*, *bream*, &c. but especially *carp*, and those ponds that are nearest the sea, and whose water is a little blackish, yield the best and fattest *carp*; and, that if you cast into your fish-ponds, thro' which there is but little current, sometimes a load of the refuse salt earth, that as the saltness is cast out, and so of no value, it improves them as salt does *pigeons*; and that *trout-ponds* being made at the head of a chalky spring, that they may feed at the very atoms of chalk that issues out of rocks with the water, are a great improvement to these fish: Some, says he, feed them with flesh, &c. but 'tis not so good as their natural food.

Feed your *pike*, *carp*, and other fish. with bread, grains, chippings of bread, entrails of chickens, &c.

If you would have *carp* large in *April*, the water then growing low, cleanse the sides, where the water is fal'n away, with a rake; and then sow *hay-seed* round about, and rub it in well, and about *September* the grass will grow, and the water overflow it, and they feeding thereon, speedily become fat *carp*, of a delicious taste.

Observations. Female *carp* are eight or nine years e'er they breed much, therefore 'tis requisite you should get some

Some of that age, to have *speedy* advantage by them, you ought to have 2 or 3, lest one should die, the male ought to be 4 years old; put into each female 14 males. A pond of half an acre will feed yearly 400 *carp*. To make them *very* fat and large, not only hay-feed, &c. as is already said, but if you take 'em out of the pond, and put them into *pits* or *puddles* in pastures, or deep ditches in meadows, they'll speedily grow very large. 'Tis said, *carp* never feeds but in the summer-season, and, that a deep pond of 12 foot square, that lies *warm* will yield 600 *carp*.

Another says, that putrified and stinking water injures fish the worst of any thing, therefore cleanse your *ponds* every 3 years at least, of wood, sedges, and filth. In clay countries, *ponds* are are subject to mud, therefore once in 7 years drain them in the beginning of the spring; put the fish you preserve into smaller *pits* or *stews*, the other use as you please: then causing *men* to tread the *mud* with *their feet*, the *eels* will rise out, then take them, afterwards let the *men* throw out the *mud*, and fill it, which is good compost for *land*; then then sod the bottom and sides of the *pond* with *green sods*, and fix 'em hard in with stakes of *fallow*; these sides will nourish the fish exceedingly.

This done, if there is no fresh spring in the *pond*, then lade the water back again into it, then drawing your sluices, take out your store of fish, and put them again into your *pond*, and observe that there be two parts spawners, and a third millers. These pits and small stews are best for feeding; therefore always keep them with fresh water, and plac'd so one by another, that you may empty them when you please; once in three months put fresh sods on the banks and bottoms, of the fruitfulest grass: you shall put into them store of *roach*, *dace*, *minnows*, *loach*, and *millers-thumb*, for the bigger fish to feed thereon, also *garbage*, and the *blood* of sheep, calves, hogs, and the like, will fat fish speedily;

speedily ; for as *fish* in *rivers* have something brought them to feed on, so those imprison'd in *ponds*, and want that help must be reliev'd, or perish : Feed them also with grains, curds chipings of bread, and any sort of grain, thrown into the ponds morning and evening.

OF BUCK HUNTING.

HAVING under the article hart (which see) treated so largely, as to their nature, and the ways of hunting them, there needs the less to be said as to *hunting the buck*, and the rules for taking him : for he that can hunt a *hart* or *stag* well, will not hunt a *buck* ill.

Besides, *fallow deer* being common among us, and those usually in parks and enclosures of divers situations and statures, different from one another ; it would be a difficult task to give instructions for every particular.

And indeed it is the proper business of every keeper of parks, &c. to understand the nature and craft of his deer in hunting ; all are to be acquired by experience more than reading ; however I shall briefly inform you of what relates to *buck hunting* as now practised.

There is no such skill and art required in lodging a buck, as in harbouring a *hart* or *stag*, nor so much drawing after, but you may judge by the view, and observe what grove or coppice he enters ; for a *buck* does not wander up and down as the hart, nor change his layer so often, neither use so many crossings, doublings, shifts, and devices, nor doth he flee so far before the *hounds*, but avoids the highway and open places, as much as he can ; he is not so crafty or so strong to beat a river, or to stay so long at soil ; neither is he so free to take a great river, nor must it be deep ;
but

but being close hunted, he will flee into such strong coverts as he is accustomed to, and it has been observed, that some bucks that have leaped over a park pale, after a ring or two, have returned of themselves, chusing rather to die where they have been acquainted, than in a strange place.

The buck *groans* and *trots* as the hart *belleth*, and with a worse noise and rattling in the throat, leaps lighter at the rut than the *stag*; neither will these two beasts come near one another's layer, and they have seldom or never any other relays than the old hounds.

They also herd more than the *hart* does, and lie in the driest places, though if they are at large they herd but little from *May* to *August*.

Now the greatest subtlety a huntsman needs to use in hunting the *buck*, is to have a care of hunting counting or change, because of the plenty of *fallow deer* that use to come more directly upon the hounds than the red deer does.

The does begin to fawn about the end of *May*, and continue till *Midsummer*.

The bucks mew or shed their horns or heads every year about, or in, *April*, and part of *May*, and their new ones are burnisht about the end of *August*.

The buck makes his *Fewmishing* in divers manners and forms as the *hart*, according to the diversity of food, and the time of the day, morning and evening; but they are most commonly round.

The buck comes in season the eighth of *July*, and goes out at *holy rood*, which is the fourteenth of *September*.

The *doe* comes in season when the buck goes out, and goes out at Twelfth-tide.

In buck hunting the same hounds are used as in running the *stag*. In forests and chaces as they lie at *layer*, so they are hunted.

In parks where they are inclosed, the sport is not so diverting

diverting by reason of the greater change and soil, unless they break out and run the country, which they seldom do.

But deer that lie out though near the park, make for the generality better chaces than forest deer.

The keeper shooting a BUCK to be run down.

In order to facilitate the chase, the keeper commonly selects a fat buck out of the herd, which he shoots to maim him, and then he is run down by the hounds.

As to the method of hunting the *buck*; the company generally go out very early for the benefit of the morning, sometimes they have a deer ready lodged, if not, the coverts are drawn till one is rowzed; or sometimes in a park a deer is pitched upon, and forced from the herd, then more hounds are laid on to run the chase, if you come to be at a fault, the old staunch hounds are only to be relied upon till you recover him again: if he be sunk and the hounds thrust him up, it is called an *imprime*, and the company all sound a *recheat*; when he is run down, every one strives to get in to prevent his being torn by the hounds.

Fallow deer seldom or never standing at bay..

He that first gets in, cries hoo-up, to give notice that he is down and blows a death. When the company are all come in they paunch him and reward the *bounds*; and generally the chief person of quality amongst them *takes say*, that is cuts his belly open, to see how fat he is.

When this is done, every one has a chop at his neck, and the head being cut off is shewed to the *bounds* to encourage them to run only at male deer, which they see by the horns, and to teach them to bite only at the head: then the company all standing in a ring, one blows a single death, which being done all blow a double *recheat*, and so conclude the chase with a general halloo of hoo-up, and depart the field to their several

veral homes, or to the place of meeting; and the huntsman, or some other, hath the deer cast cross the buttocks of his horse, and so carries him home.

Of HARTS.

A HART is the most noble and stately beast, and in the first year is called a *hind calf*, in the second a *knobber*, in the third a *brock*, in the fourth a *staggard*, in the fifth a *stag*, and in the sixth a *hart*.

Harts are bred in most countries, but the ancients prefer those of *Britain* before all others, where they are of divers colours.

These excel all others in the beauty of their horns, which are very high, yet do not grow to their bones or scalps, but to their skins, branching forth into many spears, being solid throughout, and as hard as stones, and fall off once a year.

But if they remain abroad in the air; and if they are by that means sometimes wet and sometimes dry, they grow as light as any other less solid substance; by which it should seem they are of an earthy substance, concrete, and hardened with a strong heat, made like unto bones.

They lose their horns every year in the spring.

At one year old they have nothing but bunches, that are small signifiers of horns to come: at two years they appear more perfectly, but strait and single: at three years they grow into two spears; at four into three, and so increase every year in their branches till they are six; and above that time their age is not certainly to be known by the head.

Having lost their horns, in the day-time they hide themselves, inhabiting the shades, to avoide the annoyance of flies, and feed, during that time, only in the night.

Their

Their new horns come out at first like bunches, and afterwards (as has been said before) by the increase of the sun's heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough skin, which is called a *velvet head*; and as that skin drieth, they daily try the strength of their new heads upon trees, which not only scrapeth off the roughness, but by the pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their fellows; for at last, when in their chafing and fretting of their new horns against the trees, they can feel no longer pain and smart in them, they seem as if they thought it were high time to forsake their solitary dwellings and return again to their former condition.

The reason why *harts* and *deers* shed their horns annually are these :

First, because of the matter of which they consist; for it is dry and earthy like the substance of green leaves, which also fall annually; likewise wanting glewy or holding moisture, for which reason the horn of a *hart* cannot be bent.

Secondly, from the place they grow upon, for they are not rooted upon the skull, but only within the skin.

Thirdly, from the efficient cause; for they are hardened both with the heat of summer and cold of winter; by means of which the pores which should receive the nourishing liquor are shut up and stopped, so that their native heat necessarily dieth; which does not so happen in other beasts, whose horns are for the most part hollow and fitted for longer continuance; but these are of lesser, and the new bunches swelling up, towards the spring, do thrust off the old horns, having the assistance of boughs or trees, weight of the horns, or by the willing excursion of the beast that beareth them.

It has been observed, that when a *hart* pricketh up his ears, he windeth sharp, very far and sure, and discovereth

covereth all treachery against him ; but if they hang down and wag, he perceives no danger.

Their age is discerned by their teeth ; they have four on both sides, with which they grind their meat ; besides two others, which are much larger in the male than in the female.

All these beasts have worms in their heads, underneath their tongues, in a hollow place where the neck-bone is joined to the head, which are no bigger than fly-blows.

The blood of the *hart* is not like that of other beasts, for it hath no fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed.

His heart is very great, and so are all those of fearful beasts, having in it a bone like a cross.

He hath no gall, and that is one of the causes of his long life, and therefore are his bowels so bitter, that the dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat.

The genital part of a *hart* is all nervous, the tail small, and a hind hath udders between her thighs, with four speans like a Cow.

These are above all other beasts both ingenious and fearful, who although they have large horns, yet their defence against other four-footed beasts, is to run away.

The *hart* is strangely amazed, when he hears any one call or whistle in his fist : for trial of which, some seeing a *hart* in the plain in motion, have called after him, crying, *ware, ware, take heed* ; and thereupon have seen him instantly turn back, making some little stand.

He hears very perfectly when his head and ears are erected ; but imperfectly when he lets them down.

When he is on foot, and not afraid, he admires every thing he sees, and takes a pleasure to gaze at them.

A *hart* can naturally swim a great way, insomuch
that

that some which have been hunted in forests near the sea, have plunged into it, and have been killed by fishermen twelve miles from land.

It is reported of them, that when they go to rut, and for that purpose are obliged to cross some great river or arm of the sea, they assemble in great herds, the strongest going in first, and the next in strength following him, and so one after the other, relieving themselves by staying their heads on the buttocks of each other.

The *hind* commonly carries her calf eight or nine months, which usually falls in *May*, altho' some of them have two at once, and eat up the skin wherein the calf did lie.

As the calf grows up, she teaches it to run, leap, the way it must take to defend itself from the hounds.

Harts and *hinds* are very long lived, living commonly an hundred years and upwards.

Of HART-HUNTING.

Gesner, speaking of the hunting of the *hart*, says as follows, *This wild, deceitful, and subtle beast, by windings and turnings, does often deceive it's hunter, as the harts of Meandros flying from the terrible cry of Diana's hounds*: Wherefore the prudent hunter must frame his dogs, as *Pythagoras* did his scholars, with words of art to set them on, and take them off again at his pleasure.

Wherefore he must first of all encompass in the beast in her own layer, and so unharbour her in the view of the dogs, that so they may never lose her slot or footing.

Neither must he set upon every one, either of the herd, or those that wander solitary alone, or a little one, but partly by sight, and partly by their footing and fumets, make a judgment of the game, and also observe the largeness of his layer.

The huntsman, having made these discoveries in
order

order to the chace, takes off the couplings of the dogs, and some on horseback, and others on foot, follow the cry, with the greatest art, observation, and speed, remembering and intercepting him in his subtile turnings and headlings; with all agility leaping hedges, gates, pales, ditches; neither fearing thorns, down hills nor woods, but mounting fresh horse, if the first tire; follow the largest head of the whole herd, which must be singled out of the chace; which the dogs perceiving, must follow; not following any other.

The dogs are animated to the sport by the winding of horns, and the voices of the huntsmen.

But sometimes the crafty beast sends forth his little squire to be sacrificed the dogs and hunters, instead of himself, lying close the mean time. In this case, the huntsman must sound a retreat, break off the dogs, and take them in, that is, leam them again, until they be brought to the fairer game; which riseth with fear, yet still striveth by flight, until he be wearied and breathless.

The Nobles call the beast a *wife hart*, who, to avoid all his enemies, runneth into the greatest herds, and so brings a cloud of error on the dogs, to obstruct their farther pursuit; sometimes also beating some of the herd upon his footings, that so he may more easily escape, by amusing the dogs.

Afterwards he betakes himself to his heels again, still running with the wind, not only for the sake of refreshment, but also because by that means he can the more easily hear the voice of his pursuers, whether they be far from him, or near to him.

But at last being discovered by the hunters, and fatigous scent of the dogs, he flies into the herds of cattle, as cows, sheep, &c. leaping on a cow or ox, laying the fore parts of his body thereon, that so touching the earth only with his hinder feet, he may leave
a very

a very small or no scent at all behind for the hounds to discern.

A chief huntsman to *Lewis XII. of France*, affirms, That on a time, they having a *hart* in chace, on a sudden the hounds were at a fault, so as the game was out of sight, and not a dog would once stir his foot, at which the hunters were all amazed; at last, by casting their eyes about, they discovered the fraud of the crafty beast.

There was a great white-thorn, which grew in a shady place, as high as a moderate tree, which was encompassed about with other smaller shrubs; into this the *hart* having leaped, stood there a-loft, the boughs spreading from one to another, and there remain'd till he was thrust through by the huntsman, rather than he would yield himself up a prey to the hounds his mortal enemies.

But their usual manner is, when they see themselves hard beset, and every way intercepted, to make force at their enemy with their horns, who first comes upon him, unless they be prevented by spear or sword.

When the beast is slain, the huntsman with his horn windeth the fall of the beast, and then the whole company comes up, blowing their horns in triumph for such a conquest; among whom, the skilfullest opens the beast, rewards the hounds with what properly belongs to them, for their future encouragement: for which purpose the huntsmen dip bread in the skin and blood of the beast to give to the hounds.

Of the rut of HARTS.

Their rutting-time is about the middle of *September*, and continues two months: the older they are the hotter, and the better they please the *hinds*, and therefore they go to rut before the young ones; and being very fiery, they will not suffer any of them to come

near the *binds*, till they have satisfied their venereal appetite.

But for all this, the young ones are even with the old, for when they perceive that the old are grown weak by excess of rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the place, that they may be masters of the sport.

They may be easily killed in rutting-time, for they follow the scent of the *binds* with so much eagerness, laying their noses to the ground, that they mind that only, and nothing else.

It is dangerous for any man to come near them at that time, for then they will make at any living creature of a different kind.

In some places their lust arises in *October*, and also in *May*; and then, whereas at other times the males live apart from the females, they go about like lascivious lovers, seeking the company of the females.

The males, in their raging lust, make a peculiar noise.

One male will cover many females, continuing in this appetite for one or two months.

The females seem chaste, and unwilling to admit of copulation, by reason of the rigour of the *genital* of the male; and therefore they sink down on their buttocks, when they begin to feel his *semen*, as it has been observed in tame *harts*; and if they can, the females run away, the males striving to hold them back with their fore-feet.

It cannot be well said, that they are covered standing, lying, or going, but rather running; for so are they filled with greatest severity.

When one month or six weeks is over of their rutting, they grow much tamer; and laying aside all fierceness, they return to their solitary places, digging every one by himself a several hole or ditch, in which they lie, to assuage the strong favour of their lust; for
they

they stink like goats, and their face begins to look blacker than at other times : and in those places they live till some showers of rain fall ; after which they return to the pasture again, living in flocks as they did before.

The females having been thus filled, never associate again with the male till she is delivered of her burthen, which is in about eight months, and produces generally but one at a time, very seldom two ; which she lodges cunningly in some covert. If she perceive them stubborn and wild, she will beat them with her feet till they lie close and quiet.

She oftentimes leadeth forth her young, teaching it to run, and leap over bushes, stones, and small shrubs, and so continueth all the summer long, while their own strength is the most considerable.

It is very pleasant to observe them, when they go out to rut, and make their vault ; for when they smell the hind, they raise their nose up into the air ; and if it be a great *hart*, he will turn his head and look about to see whether there be none near him to interrupt and spoil his sport.

Upon this, the young fly away for fear ; but if there be any of equal bigness, they then strive which shall vault first ; and in the opposing each other, they scrape the ground with their feet, shocking and butting each other so furiously, that you may hear the noise they make with their horns, a good half mile, so long till one of them is the conqueror.

The *hind* beholding this encounter, never stirs from her station, expecting, as it were, the vaulting of him who shall get the mastery, who having got it, bellows, and then instantly covers her.

Of the coats and colours of HARTS.

The coats of *harts* are of three different sorts, *brown*, *red*, and *fallow* ; and of each of these coats

there proceeds two sorts of harts, the one great and the other small.

Of *brown harts*, there are some great, long, and hairy, bearing a high head, of a red colour, and well beamed, who will stand before hounds very long, being longer of breath, and swifter of foot than those of a shorter stature.

There are another sort of brown *harts*, which are little, short, and well set, bearing commonly a black mane, and are fatter and better venison than the former, by reason of their better feeding in young coppices.

They are very crafty, especially when in grease, and will be hardly found, because they know they are then most enquired after; besides, they are sensible they cannot then stand long before the hounds.

If they be old, and feed on good ground, then are their heads black, fair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The *fallow harts* bear their heads high, and of a whitish colour, their beams small, their antlers long, slender, and ill grown; having neither heart, courage nor force.

But those which are of a lively *red fallow*, having a black or brown list down the ridge of the back, are strong, bearing fair and high heads, well furnished and beamed.

Of the heads and branches of HARTS.

As there are several sorts of *harts*, so also have they different heads, according to their age, country, rest, and feeding.

Here you must take notice, that they bear not their first head (which we call *broches*, and in a fallow deer *pricks*) until they enter the second year of their age.

In the third year they bear four, six, or eight, small branches: at the fourth, they bear eight or ten: at
the

the fifth, ten or twelve: at six, fourteen or sixteen: and at the seventh year, they bear their heads beamed, branched and summed, with as much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply but in greatness only.

The time of HARTS mewing or casting their head.

An old *hart* casteth his head sooner than the young, and the time is about the months of *February* and *March*.

Here *note*, that if you geld a *hart* before he hath a head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he has a head, he will never after mew and cast it: and so if he be gelded when he hath a velvet head, it will ever be so, without fraying or burning.

As soon as they have cast their heads, they instantly withdraw into the thickets, hiding themselves in such convenient places where they can have good water and strong feeding, near some ground where wheat and pease are sown: but young harts do never betake themselves to the thickets till they have born their third head, which is in the fourth year.

After they have mewed, they will begin to button in *March* and *April*; and as the sun grows strong, and the season of the year puts forward the crop of the earth, so will their heads increase in all respects; so that by the middle of *June*, their heads will be summed as much as they will bear all the year.

The names and diversity of Heads, according to the terms used by Hunters.

The part which bears the *antlers*, *royals*, and *tops*, is called the *beam*, and the little streaks therein are called *gutters*.

That which is about the crust of the *beam* is termed *pearls*, and that which is about the bur itself, formed

like little *pearls*, is called, *pearls bigger than the rest*.

The bur is next the head, and that which is about the bur is called *pearls*; the first is called *antler*, the second *sur-antler*: all the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the crown, palm, or croche, are called *royals*, and *sur-royals*; the little buds or broches about the top, are called *croches*.

Their *heads* also go by several names; the *first* head is called a *crowned top*, because the *croches* are ranged in form of a crown.

The *second* is called a *palmed top*, because the *croches* are formed like a man's hand.

Thirdly, all heads which bear not above three or four, the *croches* being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluster of nuts, are to be called heads of so many *croches*.

Fourthly, all heads which bear two in top, or having their *croches* doubling, are to be called *forbed heads*.

Fifthly, all heads which have double burs, or the *antlers*, *royals*, and *croches*, turned downwards, contrary to other heads, are only called *heads*.

How to know an old HART by the slot, entries, abaturs, foils, fewmets, gate and walks, fraying-stocks, head, and branches.

First, by the *Slot*. You must take good notice of the treading of the *hart's* foot; if you find the treading of two, the one long and the other round, yet both of one bigness, yet the long *slot* will indicate the *hart* to be much larger than the round.

And besides, the old *hart's* hind-foot doth never over-reach the fore-foot; that of the young ones do.

But above all take this observation: When you have found the *slot* of a *hart* in the wood, take notice what manner of footing it is, whether worn or sharp; and accord-

accordingly observe the country, and judge by that whether either may be occasioned thereby.

For *harts* bred in mountains and stony countries, have their toes and sides of their feet worn, by means of their continual climbing and resting themselves thereon, and not on the heel; whereas in other places they stay themselves more on the heel than toes, for in soft or sandy ground they slip upon the heel, by reason of their weight; and thus by frequent staying themselves thereon, it makes the heel grow broader and bigger.

And thus may the age of a *hart* be known by his *slot* or treading.

The next thing to be considered is the *Fewmets*; and this is to be judged in *April* and *May*. If the *fewmets* or *fewmishing* be large and thick, they intimate that the *hart* is old.

In the months of *June* and *July*, they make their *fewmets* in large croteys, very soft; and from that time to the end of *August*, they make them large, long, knotty and anointed, and gilded, letting them fall but few and scattered.

In *September* and *October*, there is no longer passing a judgment by them, by reason of the rut.

Thirdly, in order to know the height and thickness of a *hart*, observe his entries and galleries into the thickets, and what boughs he has over-stridden, and mark from thence the height of his belly from the ground.

By the height of the entries, a judgment is made of the age of a *hart*; for a young deer is such as usually creeps, but the old ones are stiff and stately.

His largeness may be known by the height of his creeping as he passes to his harbour, the young deer creeping low, which the old will not sloop to.

Fourthly, take notice of his *gaity*, by which you may know whether the *hart* be great and long, and whe-

ther he will stand long before the hounds or not ; for all *harts* which have a long step will stand up a long while, being swift, light, and well breathed ; but if he leave a great flot, which is the sign of an old deer, he will never stand long when he is chased.

Lastly, take notice of his *fraying-post* ; where take notice, that by how much the *hart* is the older, the sooner he goes to fray, and the larger is the tree he chuses to fray against, and one so strong that he cannot bend with his head.

All stags as they are furnished, beat their heads dry against some tree or other, which is called their *fraying-post* ; the younger deer do it against weaker, lesser, and lower trees ; so that accordingly hunters judge confidently of their age, and of the nearness of their harbour, for that is the last action or ceremony they use before they enter it.

As to the *head* and *branches*, a *hart* is old ; *First*, when the compass of the bur is large, great, and well pearled.

Secondly, when the beam is large burthened and well pearled, being strait, and not rendered crooked by antlers.

Thirdly, when the gutters in it are large and deep.

Fourthly, when the first antler, called *anteiller*, is large, long, and near to the bur, the sur-antler near to the antler ; and they ought to be both well pearled.

Fifthly, the rest of the branches which are higher, being well ordered and set, and well grown, according to the largeness and proportion of the head ; and the croches, palm, or crown, being great and large too, according to the largeness of the beam, are signs of an old *hart*.

How

*How to seek a HART in his haunts and feeding-places,
according to the seasons of the year.*

All *harts* change their manner of feeding every month ; and forasmuch as *November* is the conclusion of their rutting-time, I shall begin with that : in this they feed in heaths and broomy places.

In *December* they herd together, and withdraw themselves into the strengths of the forests, to shelter themselves from the cold winds, snows, and frosts, and feed on the holm tres, elder trees, brambles, and whatsoever green thing they can find ; and if it snow, they will skin or peel the trees like a goat.

In *January*, *February*, and *March*, they leave herding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the forest will feed on the winter-pasture, sometimes making their incursions into the neighbouring corn-fields, if they can perceive the blades of wheat, rye, or the like, appear above ground.

In *April* and *May*, they rest in their thickets and other bushy and shady places, during that season, and stir very little till rutting-time, unless they are disturbed.

There are some *harts* so cunning, that they will have two several layers to harbour in, a good distance one from the other, and will frequently change (for their greater security) from the one to the other, taking still the benefit of the wind.

In these months they go not to the soil, by reason of the moisture of the spring, and the dew that continually over-spreads the grass.

In *June*, *July*, and *August*, they are in the pride of their grease, and do resort to spring-coppices and corn-fields, only they seldom go where rye or barley grows.

In *September* and *October* they leave their thickets and go to the rut, during which season they have no certain place either for food or harbour.

After what manner a Huntsman should go drawing in the springs.

He ought not to come too early in the springs or hewts where he thinks the *hart* feedeth, and is at relief, for they usually go to their layers in the springs; and if they be old, crafty deer, they will return to the border of the coppice, and there listen whether they can hear any approaching danger, and if they once chance to vent the Huntsman or the hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntsman's proper time; let him beat the outsidcs of the springs or thickets, if he find the track of a *hart* or *deer*, he ought to observe whether it be fresh, which may be known by the following tokens; the dew will be beaten off, the soil fresh, or the ground broken, or printed with other tokens; so he may judge his game lately went that way.

Having found his slot or treading, and the hound sticking well upon it, let him hold him short; for he shall draw better being so held, than if he were let at length of the leam; and thus let him draw till he is come to the covert, if possible, taking notice, by the way, of the slot, falls, entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him.

Having done this, let him plash down small twigs, some above and some below, as he shall think fit; and then while the hound is hot, let him beat the outsidcs and make ring-walks twice or thrice about the wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himself by the eye; another while through the thickets and coverts, for fear lest his hounds should overshoot it, having still better scent in the coverts than highways.

If he is in doubt whether the *hart* is gone out of the ring-walks, or fears he has drawn amiss, then let him
go

go to the marks that he plushed, and draw counter, till he may take up the fewmet.

Directions for harbouring a STAG.

The Harboured having taught his hound to draw mute always round the outside of the covert, as soon as his hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing and straining his leam, he then is to seek for his slot; if he finds the heel thick, and the toe spreading broad, these are signs that it is an old deer, especially if it is fringed, that is broken on both the sides.

And if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the slot, he must draw into the covert as he passes, observing the size of the entries; the larger and higher, the older the deer: as also his croppings of the tenders as he passes, the younger the deer the lower, the older the deer the higher are the branches.

He ought also to observe his fewmishings as he passes, the largeness of which bespeaks the largeness of the deer: He must also be curious in observing the fraying-post, which is usually the last opportunity he has to judge by; the eldest deer fraying highest, against the largest trees, and that being found, it may be concluded his harbour is not far off.

Therefore he ought to draw with more circumspection, checking the drawing-hound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the deer in the wind, which when you have discovered by his eagerness that draws him, let him retire some distance back, and round the place with the hound, first at a considerable distance, and then if he finds him not disturbed, let him make a second round within that; and this will not only secure you that he is in the harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (except he be forced) pass that taint your hound left in the rounding of him.

So

After what manner a Huntsman should go drawing in the springs.

He ought not to come too early in the springs or hewts where he thinks the *hart* feedeth, and is at relief, for they usually go to their layers in the springs; and if they be old, crafty deer, they will return to the border of the coppice, and there listen whether they can hear any approaching danger, and if they once chance to vent the Huntsman or the hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntsman's proper time; let him beat the outsidcs of the springs or thickets, if he find the track of a *hart* or *deer*, he ought to observe whether it be fresh, which may be known by the following tokens; the dew will be beaten off, the soil fresh, or the ground broken, or printed with other tokens; so he may judge his game lately went that way.

Having found his slot or treading, and the hound sticking well upon it, let him hold him short; for he shall draw better being so held, than if he were let at length of the leam; and thus let him draw till he is come to the covert, if possible, taking notice, by the way, of the slot, falls, entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him.

Having done this, let him plash down small twigs, some above and some below, as he shall think fit; and then while the hound is hot, let him beat the outsidcs and make ring-walks twice or thrice about the wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himself by the eye; another while through the thickets and coverts, for fear lest his hounds should overshoot it, having still better scent in the coverts than highways.

If he is in doubt whether the *hart* is gone out of the ring-walks, or fears he has drawn amiss, then let him
go

go to the marks that he plushed, and draw counter, till he may take up the fewmet.

Directions for harbouring a STAG.

The Harboured having taught his hound to draw mute always round the outside of the covert, as soon as his hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing and straining his leam, he then is to seek for his slot; if he finds the heel thick, and the toe spreading broad, these are signs that it is an old deer, especially if it is fringed, that is broken on both the sides.

And if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the slot, he must draw into the covert as he passes, observing the size of the entries; the larger and higher, the older the deer: as also his croppings of the tenders as he passes, the younger the deer the lower, the older the deer the higher are the branches.

He ought also to observe his fewmishings as he passes, the largeness of which bespeaks the largeness of the deer: He must also be curious in observing the fraying-post, which is usually the last opportunity he has to judge by; the eldest deer fraying highest, against the largest trees, and that being found, it may be concluded his harbour is not far off.

Therefore he ought to draw with more circumspection, checking the drawing-hound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the deer in the wind, which when you have discovered by his eagerness that draws him, let him retire some distance back, and round the place with the hound, first at a considerable distance, and then if he finds him not disturbed, let him make a second round within that; and this will not only secure you that he is in the harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (except he be forced) pass that taint your hound left in the rounding of him.

So

So that having broke a bough for his direction, he may at any time unharbour that *hart*.

How to find a HART lost the night before.

A Huntsman may fail of killing a *hart* divers ways; sometimes by reason of great heat, or by being overtaken with the night, or the like.

If it should happen so, do as follows.

First, they who follow the hounds, must mark the place where they left the chace, and at break of day bring the blood hound to it, with the kennel after him.

If any hound vents, whom he knows to be no lier nor babbler, he shall put his hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two notes with his horn, to call all his fellows about him; and if he find where the *hart* is gone into some likely covert or grove, then must he draw his hounds about it, and if he there renews the slot or view, let him first consider whether it be right or not, if it be right let him blow his horn.

And if he happens to find five or six layers, let it not seem strange, for *harts* hunted and spent do frequently make many layers together, because they cannot stand, but lie and feed.

Harts which are hunted, most commonly run up the wind, and strait forwards as far as they are able, and finding any water or soil, do stay a long time therein, by which means their joints are so benumbed and stiffened, that coming out, they cannot go far, nor stand up long, and therefore are forced to take up with any harbour they can find which may be a present covert to them.

To find a HART in high woods.

In the seeking of a *hart* in high woods, you must have

have regard to two things ; that is, the thickets of the forest, and the season.

If it be in very hot weather, gnats, horse-flies, and the like, drive the deer out of the high woods, and they disperse themselves into small groves and thickets, near places of good feeding.

According to the coverts which are in the forest, so must the Huntsman make his inquiry ; for sometimes the *hart* lies in the tufts of white-thorn, sometimes under little trees, other whiles under great trees in the high woods, and sometimes in the skirts of the forest, under the shelter of little groves and coppices.

And therefore the Huntsman must make his ring-walk large or small, according to the largeness of those harbours or coverts.

How to unharbour a HART and cast off the hounds.

When the relays are well set and placed, let the Huntsman with his pole walk before the kennel of hounds ; and being come to the blemishes, let him take notice of the slot, and such other marks as may be observed from the view of the deer, in order that he may know whether the hounds run riot or not.

Then the Huntsman must cast abroad about the covert, to discover the *hart* when he is unharboured, the better to distinguish him by his head or otherwise.

If the blood-hound, in drawing, chance to overshoot, and draw wrong or counter, then the Huntsman must draw him back, saying, *Back, back, soft, soft*, until he hath set him right again ; and if he perceive that the hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down and observing the slot or ports, he must then cherish him, by clapping him on the back, and giving him encouraging words ; thus must he draw on with his hounds till he descries the deer.

Some

Some deers are so cunning and crafty, that when they are unharboured from their layer, they will coast round about to find some other deer, whereby the hounds may be confounded in the change of hunts.

If the Huntsman have the *hart* in view, he ought still to draw upon the slot, blowing and hallooing till the hounds are come in. When he finds they are in full cry, and take it right, he then may mount, keeping under the wind and coast, to cross the hounds that are in chace to help them at default, if need require.

The subtilties which are used in hunting a HART at force.

A Huntsman ought never to come nearer to the hounds in cry, than fifty or sixty paces, especially at the first uncoupling, or at casting off the relays; for if a *hart* make doublings, or wheel about or across before the hounds, (as he seldom does) if then you come in too hastily, you will spoil the slot or view, and so the hounds, for want of scent, will be apt to over-shoot the chace.

But if after you have hunted an hour, the Huntsman perceives that the *hart* makes out end-ways before the hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer, and blow a recheat to the hounds to encourage them.

Hereupon the *hart* will frequently seek other deer at layer, and rouze them, on purpose to make the hounds hunt chace, and will lie down in some of their layers flat upon his belly, and so suffer the hounds to over-shoot him; and that they may not either scent or vent him, he will gather up all his four feet under his belly, and will blow or breathe on some moist place of the ground, so that the hounds may pass by him possibly, tho' within a yard, and never vent him.

For

For which cause Huntsmen should blemish at those places, where they see the *hart* enter into a thicket, to the end, that if the hounds should fall to change, they may return to those blemishes, and put the hounds to the right flot and view, until they have rouzed and found him again.

A *hart* has another way to bring the hounds to change, and that is, when he sees himself closely pursued, and that he cannot shun them, he will break into one thicket after another to find deer, rouzing and herding with them, continuing so to do sometimes above an hour, before he will part from them or break herd.

Finding himself spent, he will break herd, and fall a doubling and crossing in some hard highway that is much beaten, or else in some river or brook, in which he will keep as long as his breath will permit him; and if he be far before the hounds, it may be then he will use the former device, in gathering his legs under his belly, as he lies flat along upon some hard dry place.

Sometimes he will take soil, and so cover himself under the water that you shall perceive nothing but his nose.

In this case the Huntsman must have a special regard to his old hounds, who will hunt leisurely and fearfully, whereas the young hounds will over-shoot their game.

If the hounds happen to be at a default, and hunt in several companies, then it may be guessed that the *hart* hath broken herd from the fresh deer, and that the fresh deer have separated themselves also: then notice is to be taken how the old *staunch hounds* make it, and to observe the flot; and where you see any of the old hounds challenge, cherish and encourage that hound or hounds, hastening the rest in to him, crying *bark* to such a hound, calling him by his name.

Here

Here it is to be noted, that they cannot make it so well in the hard highways as in other places, because they cannot have there so perfect a scent, either by reason of the tracks or footing of divers sorts of beasts, or by reason of the sun drying up the moisture, so that the dust covereth the slot. Now in such places (such is the natural subtilty of the beast for self-preservation) the *hart* will make many crossings and doublings, holding them long together, to make the hounds give over the chace.

In this case, the first care of the Huntsman is to make good the head, and then draw round apace; first down the the wind, tho' deer usually go up the wind; and if the way is too hard to slot, then be sure to try far enough back. Expert hounds will often do this of themselves.

But if a *hart* break out into a champain country, and in the heat of the day too, *i. e.* between noon and three of the clock, then if the Huntsman perceive his hounds out of breath, he ought not to force them but comfort them; and though they do not call upon the slot or view, yet it is sufficient if they do but wag their tails, for being almost spent, it is painful for them to call.

The last refuge of a *hart* that has been forely hunted, is the water, which in terms of art is called the *foil*; swimming oftneft down the stream, keeping the middle, fearing least by touching any bough by the water-side, he may give scent unto the hounds.

Whenever you come to a foil (according to the old rule, *He who will his chace find, let him first try up river and down the wind*) be sure, if your hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he is gone up the river; for tho' he should keep the very middle of the stream, yet will that, with the help of the wind, lodge part of the stream and imboish that comes from him on
the

on the bank, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived many.

Therefore first try up the stream, and where a deer first breaks soil, both man and hound will best perceive it.

Now the ways to know when a *hart* is spent, are these :

First, He will run stiff, high and lompering.

Secondly, If his mouth be black and dry, without any foam upon it, and his tongue hanging out ; but they will often close their mouths to deceive spectators.

Thirdly, By his *slot* ; for oftentimes he will close his claws together as if he went at leisure, and presently again open them wide, making great glidings, and hitting his dew-glaws upon the ground, following the beaten paths without doublings, and sometimes going all along by a ditch-side, seeking some gap, having not strength to leap it : yet it has been often seen, that dead-run deer have taken very great leaps.

A Huntsman must therefore govern himself according to the subtilty and craft of the deer, observing the doublings and crossings, and the places where they are made ; making his rings little or great, according to the nature of the places, time, and season ; for hounds are apt to shoot where herbs and flowers have their most lively scent and odoriferous smell.

Neither is the perfection or imperfection of the hounds to be disregarded. And if these things be done, it will be much if you lose a *hart* by default.

To kill a HART at bay.

It is very dangerous to go in to a *hart* at bay, and especially at rutting-time, for at that time they are most fierce.

There,

There are two sorts of bays ; one on the land, and the other in the water. Now if the *hart* be in a deep water, where you cannot well come at him, then couple up your dogs ; for should they continue long in the water, it would endanger their furbating or foundring.

In this case, get a boat and swim to him, with dagger drawn, or else with a rope that has a noose, and throw it over his horns ; for if the water be so deep that the *hart* swims, there is no danger in approaching him ; otherwise you must be very cautious.

As to a *land bay*, if a *hart* be burnished, then you must consider the place ; for if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no wood nor covert, it is dangerous and difficult to come in to him ; but if he be on a hedge side, or in a thicket, then, while the *hart* is staring on the hounds, you may come softly and covertly behind him and cut his throat.

If you miss your aim, and the *hart* turn head upon you, then take refuge at some tree ; and when the *hart* is at bay, couple up your hounds ; and when you see the *hart* turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your sword.

Directions at the Death of a HART or BUCK.

The first ceremony, when the huntsman comes in to the death of a deer, is, to cry, *ware haunch*, that the hounds may not break in to the deer ; which being done, the next is the cutting his throat, and there blooding the youngest hounds, that they may the better love a deer, and learn to leap at his throat : then the *mort* having been blown, and all the company come in, the best person, who hath not taken say before, is to take up the knife that the keeper or huntsman is to lay across the belly of the deer, some holding by the fore-legs, and the keeper or huntsman drawing down the pizzle, the person who takes say,

to draw the edge of the knife leisurely along the middle of the belly, beginning near the brisket, and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to discover how fat the deer is ; then he that is to break up the deer, first slits the skin from the cutting of the throat downwards, making the *arber*, that so the ordure may not break forth, and then he paunches him, rewarding the hounds with it.

In the next place, he is to present the same person, who took say, with a drawn hanger, to cut off the head of the deer. Which being done, and the hounds rewarded, the concluding ceremony is, if it be a stag, then one blows a tripple *mort* ; and if a buck, a double one, and then all who have horns, blow a recheat in consort, and immediately a general *whoop*, *whoop*.

It was formerly termed a wind or winding-horn ; the horns, probably, were winding, or compassed, but afterwards strait horns grew into use, and then they used to say, *blow a horn*, and *sound a horn* ; and now *French* or *German* horns are in repute.

In many cases, formerly, leasing was observed ; that is, one was held either cross a saddle or on a man's back, and, with a pair of dog-couples, receive ten pounds and a purse, that is, ten stripes (according to the nature of the crime, more or less severe) and an eleventh that used to be as bad as the other ten, called a purse.

There are many faults, as coming too late into the field ; mistaking any term of art : these are of the lesser sort ; the greater are, hallooing a wrong deer, or leaving the field before the death of the deer, &c.

Of RABBITS or CONIES.

RABBETS. The *Rabbit* or *Coney* is an animal about the bigness of an ordinary cat, who hides herself in the woods, or makes burrows in the ground, to retire into for safety: she has long ears, and a short tail, but well covered with wool, and is mostly of a grey and white colour. The young ones are called *sucking-rabbits*. There are two sorts, *viz.* the *wild*, and the *tame*; those that are wild are bred in warrens, and are smaller and redder, have naturally more active bodies, are more shy and watchful, and their flesh is more delicious by reason of the air of liberty wherein they breathe, and are not so melancholic: But the tame ones are quite contrary; nevertheless they make use of them in some places, to supply their warrens; and there, in process of time, coming to be divested of their heavy nature, become more and more active than before.

The *rabbit* begins to breed at a year old, bears at least seven times a year; she carries her young in her belly thirty days, if she litters in the month of *March*, and as soon as she has kennelled, goes to buck again; neither can they suckle their young till they have been with buck. Tame *rabbits*, above all other beasts, delight in imprisonment and solitariness; they are violently hot in the act of generation, performing it with such vigour and excess, that they swoon, and lie in trances a good while after the act.

The males being given too much to cruelty, kill all the young ones they can come at, therefore the females, after they have kennelled, hide them, and close up the holes in such manner, that the buck may not find them: they increase wonderfully, bringing forth every month, therefore when kept tame in huts, they must be watched, and as soon as they have kennelled, must be
put

put to the buck, for they will otherwise mourn, and hardly bring up their young.

The huts in which tame *rabbets* are to be kept, should be made of thin wainscot boards, some about two foot square, and one foot high, which square must be divided into two rooms, one with open windows of wire, through which the *rabbit* may feed; and a less room without light, wherein she may lodge and kennel; and a trough, wherein to put meat and other necessaries for her, before each of them; and thus you may make box upon box, in divers stories, keeping the bucks by themselves, as also the does, unless it be such as have not bred, with which you may let the buck lodge. Further, when a doe has kennelled one nest, and then kennelled another, the first must be taken from her, and be put together into several boxes, amongst *rabbets* of their own age, provided the boxes be not pestered, but that they have ease and liberty.

For the choice of tame rich *conies*, it needs not to look to their shape, but to their richness; only that the bucks must be the largest and richest you can get; and that skin is esteemed the best, that has the equallest mixture of black and white hair together, yet the black should rather shadow the white: a black skin with a few silver hairs, being much richer than a white skin with a few black ones.

As to the profit of tame rich *conies*, every one that is killed in season, that is, from *Martinmas* till after *Candlemas*, is worth five others, as being much better and larger; and when another skin is worth two-pence or three-pence at the most, these are worth a shilling or upwards. Again, the increase is more; the tame ones, at one kindling, bringing forth more than the wild do; besides, they are always ready at hand for the dish, winter and summer, without the charge
of

of nets, ferrets, &c. and their skins always paying their keeper's expence, with interest.

The best food for your tame *conies*, is the sweetest, shortest, and best hay you can get ; one load will feed two hundred couple a year, and out of the stock of two hundred, may be spent in the house as many as as are sold in the market, and yet a good stock maintained to answer all casualties. The hay must be put to them in little cloven sticks, that they may with ease reach and pull it out of the same, but so as not to scatter or waste any ; and sweet oats, and water, should be put for them in the troughs under the boxes : and this should be their ordinary and constant food, all other being to be used physically ; as that you may, twice or three times in a fortnight, to cool their bodies, give them mallows, clover-grass, four docks, blades of corn, cabbage, or colewort leaves, and the like, all which both cools and nourishes exceedingly ; but sweet grain should be seldom used, since nothing rots them sooner. Great care must be had, that when any grass is cut for them where are weeds, that there is no hemlock amongst it, for tho' they will eat it greedily, yet it is present poison to them, and suddenly kills them. Their huts also must be kept sweet and clean every day, for their piss and ordure is of so strong and violent a savour, as will annoy themselves as well as those who look after them.

The infirmities to which tame *conies* are subject, are two-fold,

1. The *rot* ; which comes by giving them green meat, or gathering greens for them, and giving them to them with the dew on ; therefore let them have it but seldom, and then the driness of the hay will even dry up the moisture, knit them, and keep them sound.

2. There is a certain rage of madness, engendered from corrupt blood, springing from the rankness of
their

their keeping, and which is known by their wallowing and tumbling with their heels upwards, and leaping in their huts; to cure which, give them tare-thistle to eat.

Wild *rabbets* do a great deal of damage to vineyards, and all sorts of corn, their teeth sparing nothing that they come near; and in such countries as abound with vineyards, they will eat the young shoots as soon as they begin to appear, and will do them so much damage, that it will endanger their ruin without some proper remedy; to prevent which, take some very small sticks of willow, well dried, dip one end of them into some melted brimstone, and stick the other into the ground; let them be about a fathom distant from each other, and set fire to them; and this will prevent the *rabbets* (who hate the smell) from entering into any vineyard, on the side of which those sticks are set: the smell will last four or five days, at the expiration of which you must renew it, and so a third time, inso-much, that in about sixteen days, the shoots of the vine will be so strong as not to be in danger of the insults of these animals.

The ways of taking these creatures are various, particularly such as stray from their burrows may be taken with small greyhounds, or mungrels, bred up for that purpose; and their places of hunting are among bushes, hedges, corn-fields, and fresh pastures; and though you should miss killing them, yet they are thereby drove back to their burrows, over whose holes you may lay purse-nets, and then put in a ferret close-muffled, which will quickly make them bolt out again to the net, and so are caught.

The *ferret* sometimes finds a *rabbit* asleep, which she surprizes and kills, sucks her blood, lies upon her, and sleeps there; in which case you are obliged either to kill her, or wait till she awakes, which will be often five or six hours; and therefore you must fire five or
fix

six times into the hole to awake her, upon which she will come out ; but you must always let her sleep an hour before you fire, or else the noise will signify nothing.

When you take any of the does, you must turn them loose, that you may not depopulate your warrens, and slit their ears, that they may not be killed by others, who sometimes lie in wait to shoot them.

To force *rabbets* out of their burrows without a *ferret*, take some powder of orpine and brimstone, old shoes, parchment, or cloth, and burn them at the mouth of the burrow, upon that side which the wind blows, and spread your purse-net under the wind. Some put a crab or two into the holes, which will force them out.

Nets to take RABBETS and HARES.

These nets must be made in the same manner as hal-liers, wherewith they take partridges. The mesh should be an inch and half broad, made of good strong thread, and treble twisted; but if you would make meshes lozenge-wise, you must allow four and twenty, and three fathom in length, and let them be well verged with long twisted thread, of a brown colour.

But the net with square meshes will do better, in which case they allow five feet in breadth or height, and three or four fathom in length, according to the place ; and in this no verging is required.

The first of these nets are to be placed in any path or tract, in any coppice or furrow ; for *rabbets* and *hares* always follow the most easy and beaten path : You must take notice how the wind sits, that you may so set the net, that the creature and wind may come together ; if the wind be side-ways, it may do well enough, but never if the wind blows over the net
into

into the creature's face, for he will scent both it and you at a great distance, especially a hare.

The way of taking wild CONIES.

There are divers ways of doing this, either by small curs, or spaniels bred up to the sport; and the places for hunting them who straggle from their burrows, are among bushes and hedges, corn-fields, or fresh pastures; or else by coursing them with small greyhounds: and though you may miss killing them, yet thereby you drive them back to their burrows, and preserve them from being a prey to others.

You may also drive them into their burrows, and spread purse-nets upon the holes, so that when they come out, they will be entangled in them, and so be taken: Now to force them out, it will be proper to have a ferret or two, whose mouths must be couped and muffled up, and so put into the holes, which will cause the conies to bolt out into your purse-nets; for the conies will easily smell the ferrets, and at their approach, (being of a timorous nature) dare not stay to see them.

And for the more certain taking them, it would be proper to have a hay net or two, which should be pitched up at a small distance, against the burrows you intend to hunt.

Of FERRETS.

A FERRET is a little creature that is bred naturally in *England*, but not in *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and *Spain*; they are tamed for the use of those who keep warrens, and others.

The body of this animal is longer than is proportionable; their colour is variable, sometimes black and

K
white

white upon the belly ; but most commonly of a yellowish sandy colour, like wool dyed in urine.

The head is something like that of a mouse, and therefore into what hole soever she can put it, all the body will easily follow after.

The eyes are small but fiery, like red hot iron, and therefore she sees most clearly in the dark.

Her voice is a whining cry without changing of it: she hath only two teeth in her nether chap, standing out and not joined and growing together.

The genital of the male is of a bony substance, and therefore it always standeth stiff, and is not lesser at one time than another.

The pleasure of the sense of copulation, is not in the genital part but in the muscles, tunicles, and nerves wherein the said genital runs.

When they are in copulation, the female lieth down, or bendeth her knees, and continually crieth like a cat, either because the male claweth her with his nails, or by reason of the roughness of his genital.

The ferret usually brings forth seven or eight at a time, carrying them in her belly for forty days : the young ones are blind for thirty days after they are littered, and they may be used for procreation, as their dam is within forty days after they can see.

When they have been tamed, they are nourished with milk, or barley bread, and they can fast a very long time.

When they go they contract their long back, and make it stand upright in the middle round like a bowl: when they are touched, they smell like a *martel*, and they sleep very much.

The *ferret* is a bold audacious animal, an enemy to all others but his own kind ; drinking and sucking in the blood of the beast it biteth, but eateth not the flesh.

When the warrener has occasion to use his *ferret*, he first makes a noise in the warren to frighten the
conies

conies who are abroad in their burrows, and then he pitcheth his nets ; after that he puts his ferret into the earth, having muzzled her mouth, so that she may not seize but only frighten the conies out of their burrows, who are afterwards driven by dogs into the nets or hays, planted for them.

Of OTTERS.

SOME are of opinion, that the *otter* is of the *beaver* kind, being an amphibious creature, living both in the water and on the land ; besides, the outward form of the parts beareth a likeness of the *beaver* ; some say, were his tail off, he were in parts like the *beaver*, differing in nothing but habitation, for the *beaver* frequents the salt water as well as the fresh, but the *otter* never goeth to the salt.

Though the *otter* liveth in the water, yet he doth not, like fishes, breathe through the benefit of the water, he taketh breath like other four-footed beasts, yet will remain a long time underneath the water without respiration.

If he wants prey in the waters, then he will quit them for the land ; and if by painful hunting on shore he cannot fill his belly, he will feed on herbs, snails, or frogs ; neither will he take less pains in the water to satisfy his hunger, for he will swim for two miles together against the stream, that so, when he has filled his belly, the current may carry him down again to his designed lodging, which is always near the water, very artificially built with boughs, sprigs, and sticks, couched together in excellent order, wherein he sits to keep him from the wet.

In the hunting of fish, he often puts his nose above water to take breath : he is a creature of wonderful

swiftness and activity in taking his prey, and for greediness, takes more than he knows was to do with.

He is a very subtil and crafty beast, and endowed with a wonderful sagacity and sense of smelling, inso-much that he can directly wind the fishes in the water a mile or two distance from him.

The flesh of this beast is both cold and filthy, because it feedeth on stinking fish, and therefore not fit to be eaten; yet it is eaten in *Germany*, and the *Carthusian* Friars, who are forbidden the eating of all manner of flesh of other four-footed beasts, yet they are not prohibited the eating of *otters*. There are those in *England*, who lately have highly valued an *otter*-pie, much good may do them with it.

Of OTTER-HUNTING.

This is performed by dogs, called *otter-hounds*, and also with a sort of instruments, called *otter-spears*, with which when they find themselves wounded, they make to land and fight with the dogs, and that furiously, as if they were sensible that the cold water would annoy their green wounds.

There is indeed craft to be used in the hunting them; but they may be caught in snares under water, and by river-sides; but great care must be taken, for they bite sorely, and venomously, and if they happen to remain long in the snare, they will not fail to get themselves free by their teeth.

In hunting them, one man must be on one side of the river, and another on the other, both beating the banks with dogs, and the beast not being able to endure the water long, you will soon discover if there be an *otter* or not in quarter, for he must come out to make his spraints, and in the night sometimes to feed on grass and herbs.

If any of the hounds finds out an *otter*, then view the soft grounds and moist places, to find out which way

way he bent his head; if you cannot discover this by the marks, you may partly perceive it by the spraints; and then follow the hounds, and lodge him as a hart or deer.

But if you do not find him quickly, you may imagine he is gone to couch somewhere farther off from the river; for sometimes they will go to feed a considerable way from the place of their rest, chusing rather to go up the river than down it.

The persons that go a hunting *otters*, must carry their spears, to watch his vents, that being the chief advantage; and if they perceive him swimming under water, they must endeavour to strike him with their spears, and if they miss, must pursue him with the hounds; which, (if they be good, and perfectly entered) will go chanting and trailing along by the river-side, and will beat every root of a tree, and osier-bed, and tuft of bull-rushes; nay, they will sometimes take water, and bait the beast, like a spaniel, by which means he will hardly escape.

Of BIRD-LIME.

Birdlime is stuff prepared after different ways; the common method is to peel a good quantity of holly bark about midsummer, fill a pan with it, put spring water to it; boil it till the grey and white bark arise from the green, which will require twelve hours boiling; then take it off the fire, drain the water well from it, separate the barks, lay the green bark on the ground in some cool cellar, covered with any green rank weeds, such as *dock thistles*, *hemlock*, &c. to a good thickness; let it lie so fourteen days, by which time it will be a perfect mucilage; then pound it well in a stone mortar, till it becomes a tough paste, and that none of the bark be discernable; next after wash it

well in some running stream, as long as you perceive the least motes in it: then put it into an earthen pot to ferment, scum it for four or five days, as often as any thing rises, and when no more comes change it into a fresh earthen vessel, and preserve it for use in this manner. Take what quantity you think fit, put it in an earthen pipkin, add a third part of capons or goose grease to it, well clarified, or oil of walnuts, which is better, incorporate them on a gentle fire, and stir it continually till it is cold, and thus it is finished.

To prevent frost; take a quarter of as much oil of *petroleum* as you do goose grease, and no cold will congeal it: the Italians make their's of the berries of the *mistletoe tree* heated after the same manner, and mix it with nut oil, an ounce to a pound of lime, and taking it from the fire, add half an ounce of turpentine, which qualifies it also for the water.

Great quantities of bird-lime are brought from *Damascus*, supposed to be made of *sebestens*, because we sometimes find the kernels, but it is subject to frost, impatient of wet, and will not last above a year or two good. There comes also of it into *England* from *Spain*, which resists water, but is of an ill scent, it is said the bark of our lantona, or way faring shrubs, will make as good birdlime as any.

How to use BIRDLIME.

When your lime is cold, take your rods, and warm them a little over the fire; then take your lime, and wind it about the top of your rod, then draw your rods asunder one from another and close them again, continually plying and working them together, till by smearing one upon another, you have equally bestowed on each rod a sufficient proportion of lime.

If you lime any strings, do it when the lime is very hot and at the thinnest, besmearing the strings on all sides,

sides, by folding them together, and unfolding them again.

If you lime straws, it must be done likewise when the lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well grasp in your hand, tossing and working them before the fire till they are besmeared, every straw having it's due proportion of lime; having so done, put them up in cases of leather, till you have occasion to use them.

The best way of making water BIRDLIME.

Buy what quantity you think fit of the strongest birdlime you can procure, and wash it in a clear spring water, till you find it very pliable, and the hardness thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into an earthen pot, and mingle therewith capons grease unsalted, so much as will make it run, then add thereto two spoonfuls of strong vinegar, a spoonful of the best salad oil, and a small quantity of *Venice* turpentine; this is the allowance of these ingredients, which must be added to every pound of strong birdlime as aforesaid.

Having thus mingled them, boil all gently over a small fire stirring it continually, then take it from the fire, let it cool, when at any time you have occasion to use it, warm it, and then anoint your twigs or straws, or any other small things, and no water will take away the strength thereof.

This sort of lime is best, especially for snipes and feldfares.

Of taking small BIRDS, which use hedges and bushes, with lime-twigs.

The great lime bush is best for this use, which you must take after this manner: cut down the main
K 4
branch

branch or bough of any bushy tree, whose branch and twigs are long, thick, smooth, and straight, without either pricks or knots, of which the willow or birch tree are the best; when you have prickt it and trimmed it from all superfluity, making the twigs neat and clean, then take the best birdlime, well mixed and wrought together with goose grease, or capons grease, which being warmed, lime every twig therewith within four fingers of the bottom.

The body from whence the branches have their rise must be untouched with lime.

Be sure you do not daub your twigs with too much lime, for that will give distaste to the birds, yet let none want it's proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be touched: for as too much will deter them from coming, so too little will not hold them where they are there. Having so done, place your bush in some quickset or dead hedge near unto towns ends, back yards, old houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small birds in the spring time; in the summer and harvest, in groves, bushes, or white-thorn trees, quickset hedges, near corn fields, fruit trees, flax and hemp lands, and in the winter about houses, hovels, barns, stacks, or those places where stand ricks of corn, or scattered chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts plant your lime bush, and plant yourself also at a convenient distance undiscovered, imitating with your mouth several notes of birds, which you must learn by frequent practice, walking the fields for that purpose very often, observing the variety of several birds sounds, especially such as they call one another by.

Some have been so expert hercin, that they could imitate the notes of twenty several sorts of birds at least, by which they have caught ten birds to another's one that was ignorant therein.

If you cannot attain it by your industry, you must
buy

buy then a bird-call, of which there are several sorts and easy to be framed ; some of wood, some of horn, some of cane, and the like.

Having learnt first how to use this call, you shall sit and call the birds unto you, and as any of them light on your bush, step not out unto them till you see them sufficiently entangled ; neither is it requisite to run for every single bird, but let them alone till more come, for the fluttering is as good as a stale to entice them more.

This exercise you may use from sun rising till ten a clock in the morning, and from one till almost sun set.

You may take these small birds, only with lime-twigs without the bush.

Some boys have taken two hundred, or three hundred small twigs about the bigness of rushes, and about three inches long, and have gone with them into a field where there were hemp cocks : upon the tops of half a score lying all round together, they have stuck their twigs, and then have gone and beat that field, or the next it, where they saw any birds, and commonly in such fields, there are infinite numbers of linnets and green birds which are great lovers of hempseed.

And they flying in such vast flocks, they have caught at one fall of them upon the cocks eight dozen at a time.

But to return there is a pretty way of taking birds with lime-twigs, by placing near them a stale or two made of living baits, placing them aloft that they may be visible to the birds thereabouts, who will no sooner be perceived, but every bird will come and gaze wondering at the strangeness of the sight, and having no other convenient lighting place but where the lime-twigs are, you may take what number you list of them. But the *owl* is a far better stale than the *bat*, being bigger and more easily to be perceived, besides he is
never

never seen abroad, but he is followed and persecuted by all the birds that are near.

If you have not a living *bat* or *owl* their skins will serve as well, stuffed, and will last you twenty years, there are some who have used an owl cut in wood and naturally painted, with wonderful success.

Another method of taking all manner of small BIRDS with BIRDLIME.

In cold weather, that is in frost or snow, all sorts of small birds together in flocks, as *larks*, *chaffinches*, *linnets*, *goldfinches*, *yellowhammers*, *buntings*, *sparrows*, &c.

All these except the *lark* do perch on trees or bushes, as well as feed on the ground.

If they resort about your house, or adjacent fields, then use birdlime that is well prepared, and not too old; which order after the following manner.

Put the birdlime into an earthen dish, adding to it some fresh lard, or capon's grease, putting one ounce of either, to a quarter of a pound of birdlime; then setting it over the fire, melt it gently together; but you must be sure not to let it boil, which would take away the strength of the *birdlime* and spoil it.

It being thus prepared, and you being furnished with a quantity of wheat ears; cut the straw about a foot long besides the ears, and lime them for about six inches from the bottom of the ears to the middle of the straw; the lime being warmed that it may run the thinner upon the straw, and therefore be the less discernable, and liable to be suspected by the birds.

Then go into the field, carrying with you a bag of chaff, and threshed ears, which scatter together for the compass of twenty yards in width (this will be in a snowy season,) then stick up the limed straws with the ears leaning, or at the ends touching the ground, then retire from the place, and traverse the grounds all round about; and by that means, you by disturbing the
the

the birds in other haunts, they will fly to the place where the chaff, &c. has been scattered, and the limed straws set up, and pecking at the ears of corn, and finding that they stick upon them; they will straitway mount up from the earth, and in their flight the bird limed straws, lying under their wings will cause them to fall, and not being able to disengage themselves from the straw, may be taken with ease. You must not go and take them up, when you see five or six entangled, for that may prevent you from taking as many dozen at a time.

If the birds that fall, where your limed straws are, be larks, do not go near them till they rise of themselves and fly in great flocks; by this method some have caught five or six dozen at a lift.

Some of these straws may be laid nearer home, for taking *finches, sparrows, yellowhammers, &c.* which resort near to houses and frequent barn-doors; where they may be easily taken by the foregoing method.

Having performed this in the morning; take away all the limed ears, that so the birds may feed boldly, and not be disturbed or frightened against next morning, and in the afternoon bait the same place with fresh chaff and ears of corn, and let them rest till the next morning; and then having stuck up fresh limed wheat ears, repeat your morning birding recreation.

Of C A N A R Y - B I R D S.

THE *Canary-bird* is an admirable singing bird, of a green colour, that takes it's name from the place from whence they first came, *viz.* from the *Canary Isles*, and no where else; but of late years, there is a sort of birds, that are brought in abundance from *Germany*, especially from *Tirol*, and are therefore called *German birds*; being a much better sort than the
other

other, though their originals are supposed to have been first brought from the Canaries.

These birds, that is the cocks, never grow fat, and they cannot be distinguished by some country people from common green-birds; though the *Canary-birds* are much lustier, have a longer tail, and differ much in the heaving of the passages of the throat, when they sing.

But to make a right choice of this bird, and to know when he has a good song; in the first place, let him be a long bird, standing strait and not crouching, but sprightly like a sparrow-hawk, standing with life and boldness, and not subject to be fearful.

These birds being so much esteemed for their pleasing song are sometimes sold at a high price, at ten or fifteen shillings a piece, more or less according to the goodness and excellency of their notes, there being a great difference in them.

It is very advisable before you buy, first to hear them sing, for the buyer will then please his ears; for one fancies a song bird, another a very harsh bird; if he be not so sweet: though undoubtedly the best *Canary-bird* in general, is that which has the most variety of notes, and holds out in singing the longest.

In order to know whether a bird is in health before you buy him; take him out of the store cage, and put him in a clean cage singly, and if he stand up boldly without crouching or shrinking in his feathers, and look with a brisk eye, and not subject to clap his head under his wing, it is a sign that he is in good health; but yet he may be an unhealthy bird still.

But the greatest matter is to observe his dunging; if he bolts his tail like a nightingale, after he has dunged, it is a great sign that he is not in perfect health, though he may sing at present and look pretty brisk, you may assure yourself, it will not be long before he is sick; but if his dung be very thin like water, or of a slimy

slimy white without any blackness in it, it is a sign of approaching death.

When a Canary-bird is in perfect health, his dung lies round and hard, with a fine white on the outside and dark within; dries quickly, and the larger the dung is the better it is with him, so that it be long, round and hard; but as to a feed bird; he very seldom dungs so hard, unless he be very young.

Canary-birds are subject to many diseases, as imposthumes, which affect the head and cause them to fall suddenly from the perch, and die in a short time if not speedily cured.

The most approved medicine is an ointment made of fresh butter and capons grease, melted together, with which anoint the top of the bird's head, for two or three days together, and it will dissolve it, and cure him; but if you have let it alone too long, then after you have anointed him three or four times, see whether the place of his head be soft; and if so open it gently and let out the matter, which will be like the yolk of an egg; when you have done this, anoint the place, and this will immediately cure him without any more to do.

And if you find the imposthume at any time return, do as before directed; you must also give him *figs*, and in his water let him have a slice or two of *liquorish*, with white sugar candy in his water.

Some are so curious as to breed these birds in *England*, and they have excelled all others; now for the ordering of these birds when they begin to build, or are intended for breeding, make a convenient cage, or prepare a room that may be fit for that purpose, taking care to let it have an outlet towards the rising of the sun; where you must have a piece of wire; that they may have egress and regress at their pleasure: when this has been done, set up some brooms, either *beath* or *frail*, in the corners of it, opening them in the middle,

die, and if the room be pretty high two or three brooms may be set under one another, but then you must make partitions with boards over the top of every broom, otherwise they will dung on one another's heads ; neither will they endure to see themselves so near each other's nests ; for the cock and hen will be apt to fly on an hen that is not matcht to them, when they see them just under their nest ; which many times causes the spoiling of their eggs and young ones.

In the next place you must cause something to be made so convenient, and of such bigness, as may hold meat a considerable time, that you may not be disturbing them continually, and a proper vessel for water also ; and the place where the seed is intended to be put, must be so ordered that it may hang out of the reach of the mice, for they are destroyers of them : you must likewise prepare some stuff of several sorts of things, such as cotton, wool, small dead grass, elk's hair, and a long sort of moss that grows by ditch sides or in the woods, for them to build their nests withal.

Dry them well before you put them together, then mingle all well, and put them up into a net like a cabbage net, hanging it so that they may with ease pull it out.

You must also set perches about the room, and if it be large enough set a tree in the middle of it, that so they may take the more pleasure, and always remember to proportion your birds, according to the largeness of the room, or rather let it be understocked than overstocked, for they are birds that love their liberty.

When you perceive them to begin to build and carry stuff, give them once a day or in two days at least, a little greens and some coarse sugar ; for that will cause a slipperiness in the body ; that so the eggs may come forth without injuring the birds ; for they die many times in laying the first egg, which is a loss to the breeder ; first in respect to his first breed, then to the
unpairing

unpairing of the cock, to which you ought to put another hen, whether he will pair or no : but it would be much better if that cock were taken out, than suffered to continue in the breeding place, especially if it be small ; but in a large place with pairs he cannot do that injury, and it will be a difficult matter to distinguish which is the cock of that hen that died, and as difficult to take him in a large place, without doing more injury than the bird comes to : so that it will be best to let him rest to the end of the year, when if you leave but two or three pair together, it will be the best way to take him out, and match him with another hen, and then put him in again.

* Besides when you find that they have built their nests, the nests that have their breeding stuff in them, may be taken away, for they will be apt to build upon their eggs with new stuff, if they do not lay presently.

As to the time of their breeding, it is usually three times a year, *viz.* in *April*, *May*, and *June*, and sometimes in *August* : and as for ordering the young ones, they must not be left too long in the nests ; for if so they are very apt to grow sullen, and will not feed kindly ; therefore they are to be taken out at about nine or ten days old, and put into a little basket and covered over with a net, or else they will be apt to jump out upon the first opening of the basket and be hurt, if they fall down.

They must also be kept very warm for the first week : for they will be very tender, subject to the cramp, and not digest their meat, if they take cold.

And when they are taken from the old *Canaries*, let it be in the evening, and if possible, when the old ones are out of sight ; otherwise they will be very apt to take distate, when they sit again and have young ones, and ready at every fright to forsake both their young and their eggs.

Then

Then as to the preparation of their meat; soak some of the largest rape-feed in water for twenty or twenty four hours; but if the water be a little warm twelve hours may be enough, then drain the water from the feed, and put a third part of white bread to it, and a little canary-feed in flower, and mix them all together.

Then with a small stick, take up a little at the end of it, and give every bird some, two or three times over; for if you overcharge their stomachs at first, they seldom thrive after it.

For you must know that the old ones give them but a little at a time, and the meat they receive from them, is warmed in the stomach before they give it them, and then all rape is hulled, which lies not so hard at the stomach, as those feeds which have the skin on.

Neither must their meat be made too dry; for then they will be apt to be vent burnt, because all the feeds are hot.

For it is observable that the old ones, constantly drink after they have eaten feeds, and a little before they feed their young ones: and they commonly sit a quarter of an hour feeding them, to keep them warm, that the meat may the better nourish them; therefore when you have fed them, let them be covered up very warm, that their meat may the better digest with them.

Lastly, not to admit the several names of these birds at different times and ages: such as are above three years old are called *Runts*, those above two are named *Erisses*, and those of the first year that the old ones bring up are called *Branchers*; those that are new flown and cannot feed themselves *Pushers*, and those that are bred up by hand *Nestlings*.

Of PARTRIDGES.

PARTRIDGES being naturally a cowardly, fearful, simple bird, are easily deceived or beguiled with any device whatever, by train-bait, engine, call, stale, or other enticement.

I shall begin in the first place to consider their haunts, which are not (like the pheasants) certain, but various, any covert will serve their turn, and some times none at all.

The places they delight in most, are corn-fields, especially whilst the corn grows, for under that cover they shelter, ingender and breed : neither are those places unfrequented by them when the corn is cut down, by reason of the grain they find therein, especially in wheat-stubble, and the height thereof they delight in, being to them as a covert or shelter. Now when the wheat-stubble is much trodden by men or beasts, they then betake themselves to the barley-stubble, provided it be fresh and untrodden ; and they will, in the furrows, amongst the clots, brambles, and long grass, hide both themselves and covies, which are sometimes twenty in number, or twenty-five ; nay I have heard of thirty in a covey.

Now after the winter-season is come, and that these stubble-fields are ploughed up, or over-soiled with cattle, then do these partridges resort into the up-land meadows, and lodge in the dead grass, or fog under hedges, amongst mole-hills, or under the roots of trees, sometimes they resort to coppices and under-woods, especially if any corn-fields are near adjacent, or where grows broom, brakes, fern, or any covert whatsoever.

In the harvest-time, when every field is full of men and cattle, then in the day-time you will find them in the fallow-fields which are next adjoining to the corn-fields,

fields, where they lie lurking till evening, and then they feed among the sheaves of corn; as also early in the morning.

When you know their haunts, according to the situation of the country and season of the year, your next care must be to find them out in their haunts, which is done several ways. Some do it by the eye only; and this art can never be taught, but learned by frequent experience, distinguishing thereby the colour of the *Partridge* from that of the earth, and how, and in what manner they lodge and couch together; by which purpose you may come near enough to them, they being a very lazy bird, and so unwilling to take the wing, that you may almost set your foot upon them before they will stir, provided you don't stand and gaze on them, but be in continual motion, otherwise they will spring up and be gone.

Another way to discover them, is by going to their haunts very early in the morning, or at the close of the evening, which is called the *jucking-time*, and there listen for the calling of the cock *partridge*, which is very loud and earnest, and after some few calls the hen will answer, and by this means they meet together, which you may know by their rejoicing and chattering one with another; upon hearing of which take your range about them, drawing nearer and nearer to the place you heard them *juck* in; then cast your eye towards the furrows of the lands, and there you will soon find where the covey lies.

The best, surest, and easiest way for finding of *partridges*, is by the call, having first learned the true and natural notes of the *partridge*, knowing how to tune every note in it's proper key, applying them to their due times and seasons.

Being perfect herein, either mornings or evenings, (all other times being improper) go to their haunts, and having conveyed your self in some secret place
where

where you may see and not be seen, listen a while if you can hear the *partridges* call, if you do, answer them again in the same notes, and as they change or double their notes, so must you in like manner; thus continue doing till they draw nearer and nearer to you: Having them in your view, lay your self on your back, and lie without motion, as if you were dead, by which means you may count their whole number.

Having attained to the knowledge of discovering where they lie, the next thing is how to catch them.

First, *with* NETS.

The nets for taking of *partridges* must be every way like your pheasant nets, both for length and breadth, except that the meshes must be smaller, being made of the same thread, and dyed of the same colour.

Having found out the covey, draw forth your nets, and taking a large circumference, walk a good round pace with a careless eye, rather from than towards them, till you have trimmed your nets, and made them ready for that purpose; which done, you must draw in your circumference less and less, till you come within the length of your net, then pricking down a stick about three foot long, fasten one end of the line to your net, and make it fast in the earth as you walk about, (for you must make no stop nor stay) then letting the net slip out of your hands, spread it open as you go, and to carry and lay it all over the *partridges*.

If you should lie straggling, so that you cannot cover them all with one net, then draw forth another, and do with that as you did with the former, and so a third if there be occasion; having so done, rush in upon them, who affrighted, will fly up, and so be entangled in the nets.

Secondly, *With* BIRD-LIME.

Get the fairest and largest wheat-straws you can,
and

and cut them off between knot and knot, and lime them with the strongest lime. Then go the haunts of *partridges*, and call, if you are answered, then prick at some distance from you your lime-straws, in many cross-rows and ranks, cross the lands and furrows, taking in two or three lands at least, then lie close and call again, not ceasing till you have drawn them towards you, so that they be intercepted by the way by your limed straws, which they shall no sooner touch but they will be ensnared; and by reason they all run together like a brood of chickens, they will so besmear and daub each other, that very few will escape.

This way of taking *partridges* is only to be used in stubble-fields, from *August* till *Christmas*: but if you will take them in woods, pastures, or meadows, then you must lime rods, as was before mentioned for pheasants, and flick them in the ground after the same manner.

Thirdly, *To drive PARTRIDGES.*

The driving of *partridges* is more delightful than any other way of taking them: The manner of it is thus.

Make an engine in the form of a *horse*, cut out of canvas, and stuff it with straw, or such like matter: with this artificial *horse* and your nets go the haunts of *partridges*, and having found out the covey, and pitched your nets below, you must go above, and taking the advantage of the wind, you must drive downward: let your nets be pitched slope-wise, and hovering. Then having your face covered with something that is green, or of a dark blue, you must, putting the engine before, stalk towards the *partridges* with a slow pace, raising them on their feet, but not their wings, and then they will run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a by-way, or contrary to your purpose, then cross them with your engine, and by so facing

facing them, they will run into that track you would have them: thus by a gentle slow pace, you may make them run and go which way you will, and at last drive them into your net.

To take PARTRIDGES with a Setting-dog.

There is no art of taking them so excellent and pleasant as by the help of a setting-dog, wherefore we proceed the sport, we shall give you an account what this setting-dog is.

You are to understand then, that a setting-dog is a certain lusty land-spaniel, taught by nature to hunt the *partridges* more than any chace whatever, running the fields over with such alacrity and nimbleness as if there was no limit to his fury and desire, and yet by art, under such excellent command, that in the very height of his career, by a hem or sound of his master's voice, he shall stand, gaze about him, look in his master's face, and observe his directions, whether to proceed, stand still, or retire: nay, when he is even just upon his prey, that he may even take it up in his mouth, yet his obedience is so framed by art, that presently he will either stand still or fall down flat on his belly, without daring to make any noise or motion till his master come to him, and then he'll proceed in all things to follow his directions.

Having a dog thus qualified by art and nature, take him with you where *partridges* haunt, there cast off your dog, and by some word of encouragement that he is acquainted with, engage him to range, but never too far from you; and see that he beat his ground justly and even, without casting about or flying now here, now there, which the mettle of some will do, if not corrected and reprov'd; therefore when you perceive this fault, you must presently call him in with a hem, and so check him that he dare not do the like again for that day; so he will range afterwards with more temperance,

temperance, ever and anon looking in his master's face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did well or ill.

If in your dog's ranging you perceive him to stop on a sudden, or stand still, you must then make in to him, (for without doubt he hath set the *partridge*) and as soon as you come to him, command him to go nearer if him, but he goes not, but either lies still or stands shaking his tail, as who would say here they are under my nose, and withal now and then looks back; then cease from urging him further, and take your circumference, walking fast, with a careless eye, looking strait before the nose of the dog, and thereby see how the covey lie, whether close or straggling.

Then commanding the dog to lie still, draw forth your net, and prick one end to the ground, and spread your net all open, and so cover as many of the *partridges* as you can; which done, make in with a noise and spring up the *partridges*, which shall no sooner rise but they will be entangled in the net. And if you let go the old cock and hen, it will be a means to increase your pastime.}

Of PHEASANTS.

A PHEASANT is a bird about the bigness of a cock, having a crooked bill, and feathers of various colours; it's flesh is delicious, and much coveted. Now to judge aright of this bird for eating, a cock, if young, has a short spur, if old, a sharp small spur; see that it be not pared; if fat, it has a vein on the side of the breast under the wing; if new, a fat firm vent; if you touch it hard with your finger, it will peel; then if young, it has a smooth leg, and a fine smooth grain on the flesh; if old, it has a rugged wrinkled grain on the flesh; and full of hairs, like an old yard-hen; so

if she be full of eggs, she will have a fast and open vent, if not full, a close vent.

Of PHEASANT-TAKING.

A rural diversion, performed with nets, and only in crowing-time, which is about the end of *February*, and in *March*, before they begin to breed: It is done either generally or particularly; the first is, when the whole *eye*, viz. the old cock and hen, with all their young ones, or *powts*, as they flock or run together in thick woods or coppices, are taken; or particularly, when none but the old, and such of the young as are of age fit for coupling, are taken; so that you cannot have any assurance with your nets to strike at more than one or two at a time; for the pheasant is of a melancholy sullen disposition, and when once they have coupled, do not accompany in flocks as other birds.

In order to the taking *pheasants* with the greater ease, you must be acquainted with their haunts and usual breeding-places, which are in young thick and well-grown coppices, free from the annoyances of cattle or path-ways; for they being of a very timorous nature, they esteem the strength of their covert their only safety, and do not abide, or breed in open or plain fields, nor under the covert of corn-fields, low shrubby bushes, or in large and tall trees.

Having found their haunts, next you are to find their *eye*, or brood; and here you are to observe, that *pheasants* come out of the woods and coverts thrice a day, to feed in fresh pastures, green wheat, or other grain, and that is about sun-rising, about noon, and a little before sun-set. Now the course to be followed, is to go to that side of the wood where you suppose they make their fallies, and watch the places where they come out; or by searching their haunts; for you may see the young *powts* in that season, flock and run together after the hen like chickens. Again, if you

go

go to their haunts early in the morning or late in the evening, you will hear the old cock and hen call their young ones, and the young ones answer them, and accordingly direct your path as near as you can to the place where they are, then lie down as close as possible, that you may not be discerned; but withal, observe how they lodge together, the better to know how to pitch your nets with the greater advantage, both of wind, weather, and place; and take care that all be done as silently as possible, otherwise they will betake themselves to their legs, and not to their wings, unless forced to it by a close pursuit.

But the certainest way to find them out, is to have an artificial *pheasant-call*, wherein a person should be very expert in the imitation of their notes, and the time when, and to what purpose they use them, which calls are much the same as hens use in clucking their chickens.

The chief time for using the *call*, is in the morning early, or about sun-set, at which time they seek their food, and then the note must be to call them to feed; but though these are the best times, yet the *call* must be used at other times, only altering the notes for calling them together, or the like.

Having the perfect use of the *call*, the knowledge of their haunts, and the times to take them, chuse some private place not to be discovered, and then call at first very softly, lest any should be lodged very near you, and be affrighted at your loud note; but if nothing reply, then raise your note higher and higher till it be extended to the utmost compass, and if any be within hearing they will answer in as loud a note as yours, provided it be tunable, or else all will be spoiled.

As soon as the *pheasant* answers, if it be at a good distance, creep nearer and nearer, still calling, but not so loud, and as you advance nearer, so will the *pheasant* to you, so that you will come in sight of her, either on
the

the ground or at perch, always imitating her in her true note ; then cease calling, and spread your net between the *pheasant* and yourself, in the most convenient place you can find, making one end of the net fast to the ground, and holding the other in your hand by a long line, so that when any thing strains it, you may pull the net close together ; which done, call again, and as soon as you perceive the *pheasant* come under your net, rise up and shew yourself, upon which being affrighted, she will spring, and so become entangled in the net.

In case you have divers *pheasants* answer the call, and that from several parts of the wood, then keep your first station, and as you hear them to make towards you, so get your nets ready, spreading them conveniently about you, viz. one pair of nets on one side and another on the other, lying close without any noise, only of your *call*, till you have allured them under your nets, and then stand up to affright them as aforesaid, that they may be entangled in your nets.

Another way to take *pheasants*, which is reckoned better than the former, and that is, to be provided with a *stale pheasant*, that is, a live cock, which must be tied down to your net, who by his crowing will draw others in : You must lie concealed in some bush or secret place, and when you see any *pheasant* come to your net, then draw your line, and the net will fall on him and take him.

To take *pheasants* by snares ; when you have found their passage out of the wood to their usual places of feeding, there plant a little stake, with a couple of snares of horse-hair, one to lie flat on the ground for their feet, and the other about the height of their head, to take them by the neck ; and in case there should be more passes than one, you must do the like to every one of them ; then fetch a compass about, and when you are in a direct line with the *pheasant* and the snare

that you have fitted, then make a gentle noise to fright them.

If by their dunging and scraping you perceive that they frequent any place, you may then make use of such hedge-rows as are directed to take fowl with lines and bird-lime, only plant your running-lines from them, of a convenient height, and still place one to lie flat to entangle their legs.

To take *pheasants* or *partridges*, and to preserve the game in a man's own ground: When you perceive an eye of *pheasants*, or *covey* of *partridges*, frequent such and such ground, go thither, and in some place thereof, distant from any hedge, bush, or gate, about forty or fifty paces, pitch up four sticks, each a foot long, in a square, and in the middle of the sticks scatter four or five handfuls of oats, barley, or wheat, and as you walk through the grounds from the sticks, scatter a few corns, which may serve as a train to draw on the game to the great heap in the middle of the sticks: Now the *pheasants* and *partridges* coming to feed according to their custom, will soon find out the train, and consequently the great bait; they will not fail to return thither next morning, in hopes of another repast, against which time let it be laid ready for them, and pitch by every one of the four sticks, a bush of furz; if they eat the second time, which you may discern by their dung, notwithstanding the furz-bushes, then against their next coming cross some lines of packthread, in form of a net; and if for all this they come and eat, you may be sure to take them when you please with the following device.

Take away the sticks, furz-bushes, and packthread, and then pitch the net described as follows.

The four main supporters of the net must be fixed strongly in the ground, that the net may be lightly spread on the top: The four sides of the net must be ordered in the same manner as shall be now directed
by

by the example of one of them, lift up the side of the net over the top of the net that is spread, for the side must not lie flat, but stand sloping like a pent-house, supported by small twigs, the bottom fastened in the earth, and the cord or verge of the net resting on them; then place the four furz-bushes at each corner of the net, the more to embolden them; and be sure the running-cord of the net be exact and right, the two ends thereof must be tied to a strong cord, which cord must reach to the next bush or shelter where you lie concealed, but within view of the net; when all is fixed, spread the bait as formerly, but try once or twice how the net will draw, that upon occasion all may be in good order; the best time to wait their coming is at break of day, when they are all busy in eating the bait, then draw your line with a quick motion, and presently fix it to the bush where you are, and make all possible haste to the net to prevent their escaping.

If you would preserve a breed in your grounds, then kill the cocks, and keep the hens till towards Lent, in some convenient room, and then put them out into your grounds, and they will soon find cocks for a breed.

There is another way found most effectually for the taking of *pheasants* in the winter-season, provided there is no snow: Get a net in the form of a casting-net, but larger, with the meshes about five inches wide; then take some peas or wheat, and knowing their haunts, which will be in young coppices of about three or four years growths; in such places seek out their path, and droppings or dung, which paths generally lead from the young coppices to those that are older; and having found out any path, lay about a pint of the corn in the place, observing where you lay it, so that they may come to eat; thus do for se-

veral days or about a fortnight, by which time they will be so accustomed to it, that they will come to expect some food, and by this means, all, or most of the *pheasants* in that part, will be gathered to it.

Having thus trained them, and that you certainly know when you come in the morning that they have been there, which will be found by their eating and the dung, then in such places set your nets, that is, one in one place, which is done thus; tie the top of your nets to a bough, then spread it at the bottom, and peg it down to the ground on all parts except one, which must be raised up above a foot and a half, like an arched door, with an ashen stick, then fix to the said arch several rods made of hazle, with the taper ends to the earth, within the net, so that the *pheasants* may come in by parting the sticks, but not get out again.

Having thus set your nets, which must be made of coarse thread, such as rabbit-hays, and of a tanned colour, by putting them into a tan-pit, cover your nets with boughs to prevent them from finding them; and be sure to set them some distance in the wood. The use of the nets is from the beginning of *May* to the latter end of *October*.

Of PIGEONS.

A PIGEON is a domestic bird, very well known, and fed in order to be eaten: I shall chiefly mention those that are bred in pigeon or dove-houses; some there are, for want of the conveniency of such houses, that are bred in coops and dove-cotes; in general we reckon but two sorts of *pigeons*, the wild, and the tame; the tame rough-footed ones differ not much from the wild, only are somewhat bigger, and more familiar: the wild usually perch upon trees,
being

being seldom seen on the ground, and are very good food.

By wild *pigeons*, are meant those that breed in woods, sea-rocks, &c. and by the tame, such as are bred in dove-houses.

There are indeed many sorts of *pigeons*, such as *carriers*, *croppers*, *powters*, *horsemen*, *runts*, *jacobins*, *turbits*, *helmets*, *nuns*, *tumblers*, *barbs*, *petits*, *owls*, *spots*, *trumpeters*, *shakers*, *turners*, and *finikins*, from which proceed, when they are contrary matched together, bastard-bred *pigeons*, such as are called, from the *cropper*, or *powter* and the *carrier*, *powting-horsemen*; from the *tumbler* and the *horsemen*, *dragoons*: of the generality of these I shall say but little, they being only kept for fancy, and not for the profit of the table, though the same method is to be used in breeding them.

There are different sorts of *runts*, one called *Spanish runts*, generally of a blood-red, or mottled colour; they are very loose feathered, and large bodied, but breed not so often as the smaller sorts.

Horsemen are excellent breeders, and are not easily lost; the common *English runt* is a good sized *pigeon*, and breeds well.

The *pigeon* called the *Leghorn*, is a sort of *runt*, only distinguished by a little wattle over his nostril; he is a full bodied *pigeon*, whose feathers lie close to his body, and is an excellent breeder, and generally of a grizzled colour, ermined round the neck.

To those who keep *pigeons* for the sake of good breeding, I would recommend bastard-bred *pigeons*, such as *powting-horsemen* *powting dragoons*, from a *powter* or *cropper*, and a *Leghorn*; the reason is, such *pigeons* will breed nine or ten pair of young ones in a year, for the little puff of wind thrown in from the *powter*, gives them a heat and mirth; they will continually be playing or courting, and when they

have young ones, will feed them well, which a *cropper*, by reason of the bigness of his crop, seldom doth.

Carriers breed but slowly, three or four pair a year for them, is much, by reason of their cold nature ; they are constant lovers, and very rarely tread any but their own mate, and therefore hard to match when separate ; they will often take three months time.

On the contrary, a *powter* will tread any hen that will let him, at any time ; and take him from his own mate, and he will match to another in a day or two ; so that bastard-bred *pigeons* are most serviceable for those who breed them to supply the table.

Great care must be taken to make convenient places to breed in, each pair of *pigeons* must be sure to have two nests, with baskets in them is best, for before one pair can go out of the nest, or feed themselves, the old ones will lay and be sitting ; nay, I have often seen a second pair hatched before the first could feed themselves, and the old ones feed both pair. Be sure when you take the young ones, clean the nest, or put in a clean basket, for cleanliness is a great help.

Never let them want meat, for if you do they cannot be provided with soft meat in their crop when the young hatch, which if wanting, the young ones certainly die ; or if you feed the old ones by hand, they will go feed their young immediately with what they get, which they not being able to digest, kills them ; so that the best way is to let them have meat always by them in a box, with a hopper in it made for that purpose.

Breed young ones for stock in the spring, those bred in the winter being generally cramped, and never prove good breeders.

The reason why I recommend baskets to breed in, is, tame *pigeons* seldom build their nests, the want of which a basket supplies. Be sure take care no vermin comes among them.

Of

Of those bred in pigeon-houses, the grey *pigeon*, inclining to ash-colour and black, is the best; and she generally shews her fruitfulness by the redness of her eyes and feet, and by the ring of gold colour which is about her neck.

There are two seasons in the year wherein you may stock your pigeon-house, the first is in *May*; forasmuch as these first *pigeons* having much strengthened themselves during the winter, are in a condition soon to yield profit to the buyer. Secondly, in *August*, for at that time there are a great number of young *pigeons* that have been well fed with the corn which their dams, both cocks and hens, have plentifully supplied them with, from the harvest in that season.

You must take care to furnish your pigeon-house according to the bigness of it; if you put but a few in it, 'twill be a great while before you will have the pleasure of eating young *pigeons*, for you must take none out of the pigeon-house before it is well stocked.

Be sure to feed them in hard weather, and in benting-time, which is when the corn is in the ear, and keep out the vermin, and you will never want stock.

It is good to give them loom, mixed with salt and cummin seed, mixed well, made up in lumps and dried; it provokes lust, and helps them in breeding.

Be sure never to let them want fresh water. The best food is tares; the mornings and evenings are proper times to give them their meat, and never at noon, for fear of breaking their rest, which they usually take at that hour, which roost is very necessary to make them thrive with the food which they eat.

A Secret to hinder Pigeons from quitting the pigeon-house.

Take the head and feet of a gelt he-goat, and boil them together till the flesh separates from the bone; take this flesh and boil it again in the same liquor, till the whole is consumed; bruise into this decoction,
which

which is very thick, some potter's earth, out of which you are to take all the stones, vetch, dung, hemp, food and corn; the whole must be kneaded together and reduced to a paste or dough, which form into small loaves about the thickness of two fists, and dry them in the sun or oven, and take care it do not burn; when they are baked, lay them in several parts of the pigeon-house, and as soon as they are set there the *pigeons* will amuse themselves with pecking them, and finding some taste therein which pleases them, they will keep so close to it that they will not afterwards leave it but with regret. Others take a handful of salt, which they candy, and afterwards put it into the pigeon-house. Some take a goat's head and boil it in water, with salt, cummin, hemp, and urine, and then expose it in the pigeon-house, with which they amuse the *pigeons*. Lastly, there are those who fry millet in honey, adding a little water thereto to prevent its burning too; this preparation is a repast to them, and will cause them to have such an affection for their ordinary habitation, that they will be so far from abandoning it themselves that they will draw strange *pigeons* to it.

Pigeons will live eight years, but they are only prolific for the first four years, afterwards they are worth nothing, for when they are once past that age, all they do is to deprive you of the profit you might reap by others that are younger. It is something difficult to know how to distinguish their age.

If you would furnish your table with young ones in the winter, and feed daintily, you must not tarry for them till they can fly, but take them when they are grown pretty strong; pluck the largest quills out of their wings, which will confine them to their nests; others tie their feet, or else break the bones of their legs, by which means they will be fat in a very short time, because the substance of the nourishment they receive

receive being then not so much dispersed, turns into fat.

PIGEON-HOUSE, a piece of œconomy of which a great deal may be said, there being an infinite number of things to be observed, in order to get a pigeon-house that may be advantageous and profitable to you : to begin therefore ; the first thing is to pitch upon a convenient place, of which none is more proper than in the middle of a court-yard, which is supposed to be spacious enough, or without the house, by reason *pigeons* are naturally of a fearful disposition, and the least noise they hear frightens them ; hence it is, that they always make pigeon-houses with much care and a great deal of reason, at such a distance, that the rustling noise of the trees shaken by the wind, and the over-murmurings of the water, may not affright them.

As to the bigness of the pigeon-house, that depends upon the fancy of those who build them ; but it is better they should be spacious than too little ; and for it's form, the round is to be preferred before the square ones, because rats cannot so easily come at the one as at the other ; and the round house is also more commodious, because you may, by the means of a ladder turning upon an axis, easily visit all that is within the pigeon-house, and come near the nests ~~without being~~ propped, and take the *pigeons* in them ; so that you may effect that by the conveniency of this ladder here, which cannot be done in a square pigeon-house.

Now to hinder rats from getting upon the outside into a pigeon-house, they fasten tin plates to a certain height, and in such places where the rats might pass, at the outward angles of a square pigeon-house ; these plates ought to be a foot high, and raised above half a foot on the sides, that when the rats come to them and cannot catch hold of them, they fall upon the iron spikes which are usually fixed at the bottom, or the place where you foresee they may fall.

Moreover,

Moreover, care should be had that the pigeon-house should be placed at some small distance from water, that so the *pigeons* may carry it to their young ones; and the same being a little warmed in their bills it will be more wholesome for them than when it is cold.

Care should be taken that the boards which cover the pigeon-house should be well joined together, in such manner that neither rats nor wind can pass through; the covering also should be such that no rain may penetrate through it; especially, it ought to be raised on good solid foundations, the floor good, the building solid, and well cemented, because *pigeons* dung has an ill property of ruining foundations; they must be hard plaistered, and white-washed within and without, that being the colour most pleasing to the *pigeons*. It must be a constant caution, that there be no window or opening of the pigeon-house to the eastward, but they must always, as much as may, be placed to the south, for *pigeons* love directly to feel the sun, and especially in winter; but if by reason of the situation of the place, you can do no otherwise than make the window of the pigeon-house to face to the north, you must always keep it shut close in cold weather, and open it in summer, that the cooling air may have passage into the place, which is refreshing and delightful to *pigeons* in that season of the year.

The pigeon-house should have two cinctures built without, either of free-stone or parget, one of which is to reach to the middle of the pigeon-house, and the other under the window, through which the *pigeons* go in and out; these two inclosures are made on purpose that the birds may rest upon when they return out of the fields.

F I N I S.

